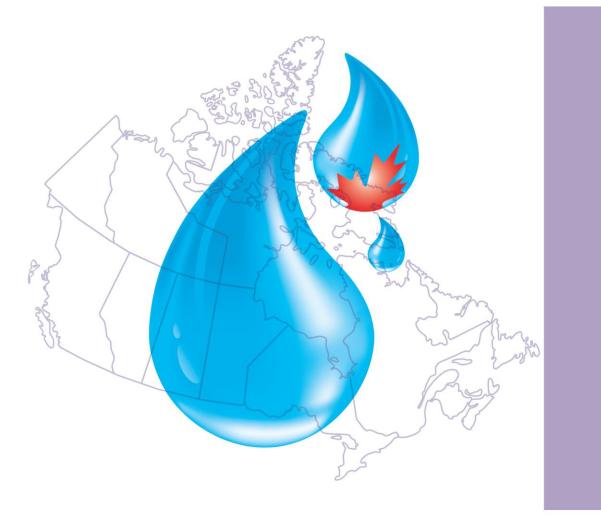# Guidelines for Canadian Drinking Water Quality

Guideline Technical Document

Nitrate and Nitrite

Canada

Health Canada is the federal department responsible for helping the people of Canada maintain and improve their health. We assess the safety of drugs and many consumer products, help improve the safety of food, and provide information to Canadians to help them make healthy decisions. We provide health services to First Nations people and to Inuit communities. We work with the provinces to ensure our health care system serves the needs of Canadians.

Published by authority of the Minister of Health.

Guidelines for Canadian Drinking Water Quality: Guideline Technical Document – Nitrate and Nitrite

is available on Internet at the following address:
www.healthcanada.gc.ca

Également disponible en français sous le titre :
Recommandations pour la qualité de l'eau potable au Canada : Document technique – Le nitrate et le nitrite

This publication can be made available on request in a variety of alternative formats.

Guidelines for Canadian Drinking Water Quality

Guideline Technical Document

Nitrate and Nitrite

Prepared by the
Federal-Provincial-Territorial Committee on
Drinking Water
of the
Federal-Provincial-Territorial Committee on
Health and the Environment

Health Canada
Ottawa, Ontario

June, 2013

This document may be cited as follows:

Health Canada (2013). Guidelines for Canadian Drinking Water Quality: Guideline Technical Document — Nitrate and Nitrite. Water and Air Quality Bureau, Healthy Environments and Consumer Safety Branch, Health Canada, Ottawa, Ontario. (Catalogue No H144-13/2-2013E-PDF).

The document was prepared by the Federal-Provincial-Territorial Committee on Drinking Water of the Federal-Provincial-Territorial Committee on Health and the Environment.

Table of Contents

Nitrate and Nitrite

Part I. Overview and Application

1.0   Guidelines

Nitrate
   The maximum acceptable concentration (MAC) for nitrate in drinking water is 45 mg/L. This is equivalent to 10 mg/L measured as nitrate-nitrogen.

Nitrite
   The MAC for nitrite in drinking water is 3 mg/L. This is equivalent to 1 mg/L measured as nitrite-nitrogen.

2.0   Executive summary

Nitrate and nitrite are widespread in the environment. They are naturally produced by the oxidation of nitrogen by microorganisms and, to a lesser extent, by lightning. The most common sources of these substances are human activities, including agricultural activities, wastewater treatment, and discharges from industrial processes and motor vehicles. Nitrate and nitrite can also be produced as a result of the nitrification process in source water or distribution systems. The concentration of free ammonia entering the distribution system can lead to nitrification and the potential increase of nitrate and nitrite in drinking water. This issue is fully discussed in the guideline technical document on ammonia in drinking water.

This guideline technical document reviews and assesses all identified health risks associated with nitrate and nitrite in drinking water. It assesses new studies and approaches and takes into consideration the availability of appropriate treatment technology in order to propose maximum acceptable concentrations that are protective of human health and achievable by both municipal and residential scale treatment technologies.

Based on this review, the drinking water guideline for nitrate is a maximum acceptable concentration of 45 mg/L (equivalent to 10 mg/L nitrate-nitrogen); the drinking water guideline for nitrite is a maximum acceptable concentration of 3 mg/L (equivalent to 1 mg/L nitrite-nitrogen).

2.1   Health effects
2.1.1   Nitrate

Methaemoglobinemia has long been considered to be the end-point of concern for humans from exposure to nitrate in drinking water. Scientific studies show cases of methaemoglobinemia occurring in bottle-fed infants, which are the vulnerable population for these effects. Recent evidence from animal and human studies suggests that effects on thyroid gland function are also

an end-point of concern. Studies have seen an effect in school-age children, but no study has looked at this health effect in infants, who would also be expected to be the most vulnerable population for this health effect. In addition, current science suggests an association between cancer and exposure to nitrates in drinking water when conditions result in nitrosation within the human body.

Although no single study can be used to establish a guideline for nitrate in drinking water, available studies in humans show no adverse health effect (either methaemoglobinemia or thyroid effects) below 45 mg/L. At this level of exposure from drinking water, the estimated increased cancer risk would be in the range considered by Health Canada to be essentially negligible.

The maximum acceptable concentration for nitrate has been established at 45 mg/L (equivalent to 10 mg/L measured as nitrate-nitrogen), to be protective of the health of the most sensitive subpopulation, bottle-fed infants. As part of its ongoing guideline review process, Health Canada will continue to monitor new research in this area and recommend any change to the guideline that it deems necessary. Monitoring of science will focus particularly on thyroid effects, including neurodevelopmental effects, in the most sensitive subpopulation.

2.1.2   *Nitrite*

Current science maintains that the effect of concern for nitrite in drinking water is methaemoglobinemia. The maximum acceptable concentration of 3 mg/L for nitrite in drinking water (equivalent to 1 mg/L measured as nitrite-nitrogen) is established based on this effect in bottle-fed infants, the most sensitive subpopulation.

2.2   **Exposure**

Canadians can be exposed to nitrates and nitrites through their presence in food, drinking water, air and soil. Both nitrate and nitrite have been found in meats – particularly wieners, sausages, luncheon meats and cold cuts. Although breast-fed infants have little exposure to nitrate, exposure for bottle-fed infants can be significant – from water used to reconstitute concentrated formula and/or from the use of soy-based formula. Nitrate is found more frequently in groundwater than in surface water, and is commonly detected in shallow wells. Nitrite is less frequently found in drinking water supplies, as it is converted to nitrate in the presence of oxygen. Approximately 80% of total exposure to nitrite is due to the reduction of ingested nitrate by oral bacteria. Nitrate and nitrite are not volatile, so exposure from drinking water is related to ingestion only.

2.3   **Analysis and treatment**

Nitrate and nitrite can be detected and analysed in drinking water supplies to levels well below the MACs. Treatment methods are generally focused on nitrate, as nitrite is relatively unstable and can be rapidly oxidized to nitrate.

Conventional water treatment processes used at municipal water treatment plants (coagulation, sedimentation, filtration and chlorination) are not effective for nitrate removal. Effective technologies for the removal of nitrate from municipal water supplies include ion exchange, biological denitrification, reverse osmosis and electrodialysis. Available treatment methods can consistently achieve levels as low as 22 mg/L (equivalent to 5 mg/L as nitrate-nitrogen).

At the residential scale, there are drinking water treatment devices available that are certified for the removal of nitrate, based on achieving a concentration of nitrate at or below the MAC. Residential reverse osmosis devices are capable of achieving lower treated water concentrations. Ion exchange technology can also be used, but finished water quality must be monitored regularly to ensure the process is working effectively and that no break-through of nitrate is occurring.

3.0   Application of the guidelines

Note: Specific guidance related to the implementation of drinking water guidelines should be obtained from the appropriate drinking water authority in the affected jurisdiction.

The MAC for nitrate has been established at 45 mg/L (equivalent to 10 mg/L measured as nitrate-nitrogen), to be protective of the health of the most sensitive subpopulation, bottle-fed infants. However, it is recommended that levels be kept as low as reasonably practicable to account for (1) the lack of studies on thyroid effects in the most sensitive subpopulation; (2) the significance of the potential health effect in infants (neuro-developmental) related to thyroid effects; and (3) the fact that ingested nitrate under conditions that result in endogenous nitrosation is probably carcinogenic to humans.

In municipal systems with a water source containing naturally occurring ammonia or that add ammonia for chloramination, free ammonia entering the distribution system can be one of the causative factors of nitrification and the potential increase of nitrate and nitrite in the distribution system. Utilities that are chloraminating, as well as utilities with ammonia in the source water, should ensure good operational practices, such as limiting excess free ammonia entering the distribution system to concentrations below 0.1 mg/L, and preferably below 0.05 mg/L (measured as nitrogen), will help prevent nitrification. Utilities using ammonia as part of their disinfection strategy should ensure that the appropriate chlorine to ammonia ratio is maintained.

Homeowners with a well should test concentrations of nitrate and of nitrite in their water supply. Wells that are located in agricultural areas are susceptible to nitrate and nitrite contamination, particularly shallow wells. Water containing levels of nitrate and/or nitrite above the MACs should not be used to prepare formula or other foods for infants.

Homeowners that have nitrate or nitrite test results consistently above the MACs should consider installing a drinking water treatment device, using an alternative drinking water source, or relocating or drilling a deeper well that has been tested or verified and deemed to be a safe supply. It is important to note that boiling water will not reduce or remove nitrate or nitrite.

The approach to reducing exposure to nitrate from drinking water generally includes management of activities within the watershed/aquifer, treatment to decrease nitrate levels in the water supply and management of nitrification in the distribution system.

3.1   Monitoring

Routine monitoring of nitrate and nitrite in surface water and groundwater is recommended in agricultural areas and other areas where discharges of nitrogen compounds may occur. It is recommended that utilities that treat their water to remove nitrate conduct continuous monitoring and recording of nitrate concentrations in both source and treated water. Alternatively, it is recommended that utilities measure and record the treated water nitrate concentrations daily, during a period when treatment operations are likely to result in the highest concentrations (such

as just prior to regeneration of an ion exchange unit). In cases where nitrite has been detected in the source water or where utilities are using biological denitrification treatment processes, it is recommended that routine monitoring of nitrite in the source and treated water be conducted in addition to nitrate monitoring.

Utilities that are chloraminating, as well as utilities with ammonia in the source water, should also monitor for nitrite and nitrate since ammonia entering the distribution system can be one of the causative factors of nitrification. Monitoring of nitrite and nitrate should be done in addition to other parameters such as free ammonia, total chlorine residual and heterotrophic plate count, at key locations in the distribution system as part of a nitrification monitoring program. It is recommended that locations such as entry points, reservoir outlets, and areas with long water detention times (e.g., dead ends) be monitored for nitrite and nitrate weekly. Utilities that undertake comprehensive preventive measures and have baseline data indicating that nitrification does not occur in the system may conduct less frequent nitrate and nitrite monitoring.

Owners of private supplies are also encouraged to have their water tested for nitrate and nitrite periodically. Shallow wells that are located in agricultural areas are particularly susceptible to nitrate and nitrite contamination and it is recommended that homeowners with these types of wells test their water for nitrate and nitrite at least once a year either in the spring or fall, when nitrate concentrations are typically the highest.

Part II. Science and Technical Considerations

4.0   Identity, use and sources in the environment

4.1   Identity

Nitrate (NO_3^-) and nitrite (NO_2^-) are ubiquitous and naturally occurring ions in the environment. Both are products of the oxidation of nitrogen, as part of the cycle required by all living systems for the production of complex organic molecules, such as proteins and enzymes (Environment Canada, 2003; IARC, 2010).

Nitrate and nitrite are chemically expressed in two different ways: in terms of the concentration of ions (i.e., mg NO_3^-/L or mg NO_2^-/L); or as the element nitrogen (N) [i.e., mg NO_3-N/L or mg NO_2-N/L]. More specifically, 1 mg NO_3^-/L equals 0.226 mg NO_3-N/L, and 1 mg NO_2^-/L equals 0.304 mg NO_2-N/L (Pfander et al., 1993; WHO, 2007). Thus, 10 mg NO_3-N/L is equivalent to approximately 45 mg NO_3^-/L, and 1 mg NO_2-N/L is equivalent to 3.29 mg NO_2^-/L. Unless stated otherwise, units of concentrations are reported as cited in the literature and conversions to concentrations of ions (nitrate or nitrite) are provided in brackets where relevant. To obtain the equivalent ion concentration, the given concentration is multiplied by the applicable conversion factor found in Table 1 below:

Table 1. Concentration conversion factors by chemical species (Pfander et al., 1993)

Chemical species	Conversion factor
Sodium nitrate ($NaNO_3$)	0.729
Potassium nitrate (KNO_3)	0.614
Sodium nitrite ($NaNO_2$)	0.667
Potassium nitrite (KNO_2)	0.541

Although nitrate is the more stable form of oxidized nitrogen, under anaerobic conditions and in the presence of a carbon source, it can be reduced by microbial action to nitrite, which is relatively unstable and moderately reactive. Under low oxygen conditions, the denitrification process further reduces nitrite to nitrogen gas (Appelo and Postma, 1996).

Nitrification is a two-step process during which ammonia is oxidized to nitrite, which further is oxidized to nitrate by ammonia-oxidizing bacteria (AOB) and nitrite-oxidizing bacteria (NOB), respectively (U.S. EPA, 2002a; IARC, 2010); these bacteria have no impact on health. This nitrification process is described according to the following equations (U.S. EPA, 2002a):

$$NH_3 + O_2 \rightarrow NO_2^- + 3H^+ + 2e^-$$

$$NO_2^- + H_2O \rightarrow NO_3^- + 2H^+ + 2e^-$$

In addition to bacterial nitrification, organic nitrogen sources, such as organic matter in the soil, manures and urea-based fertilizers, can be transformed to nitrate by mineralization and hydrolysis (Ward et al., 2005a; Cartes et al., 2009).

The Chemical Abstracts Service numbers for nitrate and nitrite are 14797-55-8 and 14797-68-0, respectively. Their molecular weights are 62.00 and 46.01, respectively (U.S. EPA, 2011).

4.2   Major uses and sources

Environmental nitrate and nitrite formation occurs both naturally and through anthropogenic processes. Naturally, nitrate and nitrite are products of the oxidation of nitrogen (which comprises approximately 78% of Earth's atmosphere) by microorganisms in plants, soil and water and, to a lesser extent, by lightning (WHO, 2007; IARC, 2010).

Anthropogenic processes are the most common sources of both nitrate and nitrite. These sources include agricultural activities (including inorganic potassium or ammonium nitrate fertilizer and organic nitrate livestock manures), wastewater treatment, nitrogenous waste products in human and other animal excreta, and discharges from industrial processes and motor vehicles (Environment Canada, 2003; WHO, 2007; Keeney and Hatfield, 2008). Nitrate and nitrite can be produced as a result of nitrification process in source water or distribution systems, which add ammonia as part of chloramine disinfection practices (Kirmeyer et al., 1995; U.S. EPA, 2006a; WHO, 2007).

In addition to their use as agricultural fertilizers, nitrate and nitrite salts have been used for centuries to cure and preserve meats and fish and in the manufacture of certain cheeses. Nitrate is also used in industrial applications as an oxidizing agent (e.g., production of explosives), and purified potassium nitrate is commonly used for glass making (WHO, 2007). Historically (during the 1930s), large doses of ammonium nitrate were used medically as a diuretic, until incidences of methaemoglobinaemia were reported (L'hirondel and L'hirondel, 2002).

In a joint Cooperation on Emission Inventories, Trends and Mapping between Canada and the United States, the total emission of nitrogen oxides from 1980 to 2010 was determined to be less than 2.5 million tonnes in Canada. Wet nitrate deposition for the periods of 1990–1994 and 1996–2000 remained relatively unchanged (U.S. EPA, 2010).

It has been estimated that aerial deposition of nitrate varies widely across Canada. Annual total deposition (dry plus wet) of nitrate at the Abbotsford aquifer (British Columbia) is estimated to be 192 mg/m^2 (1.92 kg/ha) (McGreer and Belzer, 1999). Wet deposition of nitrogen is greater in Eastern Canada, with a 10-year annual average for 1984–1994 of 3.44 kg N ha^{-1} a^{-1}, which occurred east of the Manitoba–Ontario border, compared with 0.80 kg N ha^{-1} a^{-1} west of the border (Chambers et al., 2001).

4.3   Environmental fate

Nitrogen compounds are formed in the air by lightning or discharged into it by industrial processes and motor vehicles. Nitrate is present in air as nitric acid, inorganic and organic aerosols, organic gases and nitrate radicals (WHO, 2007). Atmospheric deposition is a source of nitrate in surface water in some catchments; in other areas, the majority of deposition occurs on the land, with subsequent transport of the nitrate ions from the terrestrial basin to the surface water (Environment Canada, 2003; WHO, 2007/).

Although ammonia, nitrite and nitrate can typically be found in surface water supplies as a result of natural processes, nitrate is found more commonly than nitrite in aqueous environments, as the nitrite ion is more unstable (Appelo and Postma, 1996; OEHHA, 1997; Dubrovsky et al., 2010).

The amount of rainwater, the depth of the water table, the presence of organic material and other physicochemical properties are important determinants of the fate of nitrate in soil (WHO, 2007). Most nitrate reduction in the soil occurs through plant uptake and utilization, whereas surplus nitrates readily leach into groundwater. The nitrate ion is negatively charged and does not

adsorb to clay minerals or organic matter in soils unless they have a significant anion exchange capacity, which is uncommon in Canada. Generally, it is assumed that nitrate will not adsorb to soil particles and will have a high potential for mobility (Environment Canada, 2003; WHO, 2007).

Nitrate levels in groundwater are influenced by several factors, such as land use, soil type, geochemical conditions, aquifer type and groundwater age (Dubrovsky and Hamilton, 2010). They are usually higher than levels in surface water because of the minimal vegetation uptake and because the organic carbon needed for denitrification can be limited in groundwater (Burkart and Stoner, 2002; Dubrovsky et al., 2010). In groundwater, background nitrate concentrations are reported to vary from 4 to 9 mg NO_3^-/L (0.9 to 2 mg NO_3-N/L) (Burkart and Stoner, 2003; WHO, 2007; Dubrovsky et al., 2010). Background nitrite concentrations in groundwater are typically less than 0.01 mg NO_2-N/L (0.03 mg NO_2^-/L) and have been reported as not exceeding 0.3 mg NO_2^-/L (0.09 mg NO_2-N/L) (WHO, 2007; DeSimone, 2009). Nitrate levels in Canadian lakes and rivers rarely exceed 4 mg NO_3^-/L (0.9 NO_3-N/L), and large scale sampling in the U.S estimated a background nitrate concentration in streams of 0.24 mg NO_3-N/L (0.8 mg NO_3^-/L) (Environment Canada, 2003; Dubrovsky et al., 2010). The lower levels of nitrate in surface water are due to dilution of surface runoff, plant uptake and denitrification processes (Cohn et al., 1999).

Both agricultural and non-agricultural sources of nitrogen have the potential to elevate the levels of nitrate to several hundred milligrams per litre in groundwater and surface water (Wakida, 2005; Keeney and Hatfield, 2008; Dubrovsky et al., 2010). However, agricultural activities are most commonly associated with elevated nitrate concentrations in surface water and groundwater and have been the focus of recent scientific research. Incomplete nitrogen uptake by crops results in inorganic nitrogen remaining in the soil. Most residual soil nitrogen (RSN) is in the form of nitrate, which readily leaches from the soil into the groundwater or enters surface water through runoff and tile drainage (Environment Canada, 2003; Agriculture and Agri-Food Canada, 2010). Nitrate contamination can also occur when pastures are ploughed in the autumn and the ground is left fallow during the winter. The accumulated nitrate in the soil, resulting from the mineralization and nitrification processes, may leach into the groundwater (Power and Schepers, 1989; McLenaghen et al., 1996).

As a result of intensive use of nitrogen fertilizers in agriculture and resulting runoff, nitrate pollution of surface water and groundwater has generally increased over time (Dubrovsky et al., 2010; Lindsey and Rupert, 2012). An extensive study of the occurrence and distribution of nutrients in streams and groundwater in the U.S found that the median concentration of nitrate in streams in agricultural areas was 3.8 mg NO_3-N/L (16.8 mg NO_3^-/L), approximately six times greater than the background concentration. Similarly, nitrate concentrations in groundwater in agricultural areas were elevated with a median concentration of 3.1 mg NO_3-N/L (13.7 mg NO_3^-/L). It was also noted in this study that nitrate concentrations in surface and groundwater in urban areas were also statistically higher than background levels which was attributed to wastewater effluent from municipal or industrial facilities, fertilizers applied to lawns, golf courses and parks, septic systems, and atmospheric deposition (Dubrosky et al., 2010).

High nitrate levels in drinking water are most often associated with private shallow wells with depths less than 30 m in regions with permeable soils. Nitrate concentrations tend to decrease with well depth. The well types that are most often contaminated have a shallow, bored or dug construction within unconfined aquifers (Johnson and Kross, 1990; Fitzgerald et al., 2001; Ruckart et al., 2008). Dubrovsky et al. (2010) reported that shallow domestic wells near existing

or former agricultural areas have the highest probability of elevated nitrate concentrations. More than twenty percent of 406 wells in this category exceeded a nitrate concentration of 10 mg NO_3-N/L (44.3 mg NO_3^-/L). The authors also noted that geochemical conditions have a strong control on the occurrence of nitrate in groundwater. A median nitrate concentration of 5.5 mg NO_3-N/L (24.4 mg NO_3^-/L) was reported for wells in well-oxygenated groundwater in agricultural areas, but it was less than 0.05 mg NO_3-N/L (0.22 mg NO_3^-/L) in less oxygenated water, despite similar nitrogen inputs and land use surfaces. High nitrate levels in drinking water often occur simultaneously with microbial contamination and poor water quality (OEHHA, 1997; Fitzgerald et al., 2001). Fitzgerald et al. (2001) reported a correlation between total coliform detection and higher nitrate concentration (> 10 mg/L) in private wells.

Ruckart et al. (2008) suggested that nitrate levels are fairly stable in groundwater from year to year, with most variability from well to well reflecting differences in land and fertilizer use near the well head, individual characteristics of the well, such as depth and aquifer geology, and maintenance of the well.

Nitrite is an intermediate product of both nitrification and denitrification processes and can be produced when either process is incomplete. However, in aqueous environments, nitrite persists only within a limited range of redox conditions (Appelo and Postma, 1998; Rivett et al., 2008). Although nitrite levels are typically low in surface and groundwater, its presence has been reported when water sources are in close proximity to high nitrogen inputs or when redox conditions result in partial denitrification (i.e., wastewater, manure application) (DeSimone, 2008; Debrovsky et al, 2010; Toccalino et al., 2010). Dubrovsky et al. (2010) observed nitrite concentrations greater than 1 mg NO_2-N/L (3.3 mg NO_2^-/L) in five streams impacted by wastewater effluent. Forrest et al. (2006) reported that nitrite concentrations up to 10 mg NO_2-N/L (32.9 mg NO_2^-/L) had been detected in shallow groundwater below a heavily-manured field. An analysis of drinking water systems in the U.S indicates that nitrite can be present in drinking water supplies. The median nitrite concentrations in groundwater and surface water systems in the US were 0.02 and 0.03 mg NO_2-N/L (0.07 and 0.1 mg NO_2^-/L), respectively. However, more than 635 surface and groundwater systems reported at least one detection greater 1 mg NO_2-N/L (3.3 mg NO_2^-/L) and an additional 1,353 systems reported detections above 0.5 mg NO_2-N/L (1.6 mg NO_2^-/L) (U.S. EPA, 2009c).

Nitrite and nitrate can be formed as a result of nitrification of excess ammonia that occurs naturally in the source water and is not removed prior to disinfection or in systems that add ammonia as part of chloramination for secondary disinfection. Nitrification in the distribution system can increase nitrite levels 0.05–0.5 mg NO_2-N/L (0.16–1.6 mg NO_2^-/L) , although increases greater than 1 mg NO_2-N/L (3.3 mg NO_2^-/L) have been noted, particularly in stagnant parts of the distribution system (Wilczak et al., 1996; Zhang et al., 2009b).

5.0   Exposure

Canadians can be exposed to nitrates and nitrites through their presence in drinking water, food, air and soil. In addition, certain segments of the population may be exposed through the use of specific consumer products. The main route of exposure to nitrate/nitrite for the general population is via ingestion of food, followed by ingestion of drinking water. Approximately 5–8% of ingested nitrate is reduced by oral bacteria to nitrite (as reviewed in Walker, 1996; Mensinga et al., 2003). This nitrite, formed by the reduction of nitrate, represents approximately 80% of total exposure to nitrite, the remainder coming directly from exogenous sources.

5.1   Water
        The nitrate concentration in surface water is generally below 18 mg/L (equivalent to 4 mg NO_3-N/L). However, recent data in many European countries have demonstrated that nitrate concentrations in surface waters have gradually increased over the last few decades, in some cases doubling over a 20-year period (WHO, 2007). Agricultural runoff, refuse dump runoff and contamination with human or other animal wastes are responsible for the progressive increase in nitrate concentrations in both surface waters and groundwaters (Liebscher et al., 1992; WHO, 2007). In most countries, nitrate concentrations in drinking water derived from surface water typically do not exceed 10 mg/L (2.3 mg NO_3-N/L).
        Data collected through monitoring programs in several provinces over the years have characterized the occurrence of nitrate and its geographical distribution in Canadian drinking water. For example, in a 1982 survey of water supplies in Nova Scotia, detectable levels of nitrate (> 0.05 mg/L) were found in only 30% of community drinking water samples collected at 143 sites, with a maximum value of 2 mg/L recorded at one site (NSDH, 1982). In the summer of 1983, only six of the 59 (10.2%) municipal water supplies sampled in New Brunswick had nitrate levels greater than 4.4 mg/L, and only one sample (1.7%) had a nitrate concentration greater than 44 mg/L. In analyses conducted on 1,996 samples from registered and municipal drinking water supplies in Nova Scotia from 2000 to 2009, the percentage of samples with measurable concentrations of nitrate was 62%, with an average concentration of 5.8 mg/L; nitrate concentrations were above 45 mg/L in 19 samples (1%) (Nova Scotia Environment, 2010).
        Data obtained from various jurisdictions at selected sampling sites provide some statistics on the occurrence of nitrate in Canadian drinking water systems over the 10-year period from 2000 to 2009. This unpublished information collected from the provinces and territories is a subset of data from specific monitoring and surveillance programs in each jurisdiction. Although these selected data may not accurately characterize the statistical distribution of nitrate concentrations in drinking water across Canada, they provide the average (and maximum) concentrations of nitrate when detected: Newfoundland and Labrador —1.8 mg/L (35.7 mg/L) (Newfoundland and Labrador Department of Environment and Conservation, 2010); Ontario — 0.35 mg/L (18.8 mg/L) (Ontario Ministry of Environment, 2011); Yukon — 0.6 mg/L (4.5 mg/L) (Yukon Environmental Health Services, 2010); Quebec — 3.7 mg/L (93 mg/L) (Ministère du Développement durable, de l'Environnement et des Parcs, 2010); Nova Scotia — 18.3 mg/L (207.8 mg/L) (consolidated data from registered and municipal drinking water supplies and private wells) (Nova Scotia of Environment, 2010) Saskatchewan — 7.8 mg/L (93 mg/L) (Saskatchewan Water Security Agency, 2010); and Prince Edward Island — 16.6 mg/L (289 mg/L) in (Prince Edward Island Department of Environment, Labour and Justice, 2010) ; Manitoba — 2.5 mg/L (101 mg/L); more recent data (2009-2011) from Manitoba showed an average nitrate concentration in the treated water of 1.2 mg/L (maximum of 35.7 mg/L) (Manitoba Conservation and Water Stewardship, 2011).
        In a national survey conducted by Health Canada in 2009 and 2010, 130 raw water samples and 130 treated water samples were analyzed for nitrate and nitrite. Nitrate was detected in 42.3 % of the raw water samples, at an average concentration of 3.75 mg/L (maximum of 23.9 mg/L) and in 41.5 % of the treated water samples, at an average concentration of 3.6 mg/L (maximum of 20.8 mg/L). None of the samples exceeded 45 mg/L nitrate. Nitrite was detected in 11.5 % of the raw water samples, at an average concentration of 0.05 mg/L (maximum of

0.3 mg/L) and in 6.9 % of the treated water samples at an average concentration of 0.05 mg/L (maximum of 0.3 mg/L) (Health Canada, 2012).

Generally, nitrate concentrations in well water are higher than those in surface water supplies (Liebscher et al., 1992). Nova Scotia analysed 1,996 samples taken from registered and municipal drinking water for nitrate from 2000 to 2009. Of these, 471 samples were from a surface water source, 1,519 were from a groundwater source and the source of the 6 remaining samples were not provided. For the registered and municipal drinking systems from surface water sources, the average detected nitrate concentration was 0.8 mg/L, with the maximum value being 10.2 mg/L. For the registered and municipal drinking systems with groundwater sources, the average detected nitrate concentration was 7.14 mg/L, with the maximum value being 141.8 mg/L. Of these groundwater registered and municipal supplies, only 19 (1.2 %) of the samples were above 45 mg/L (Nova Scotia Environment, 2010).

Nova Scotia conducted a nitrate monitoring program which analysed 1,356 well water samples from 1999 to 2009. The average concentration of nitrate was 30.8 mg/L. The maximum annual nitrate concentration ranged from 113 to 207.8 mg/L. The result showed that the proportion of samples that exceeded 45 mg/L as nitrate for this period of time were in the range of 14.6 % to 24.4 % (Nova Scotia Environment, 2010).

In New Brunswick, nitrate concentrations in 20% of 300 well water samples collected in an agricultural area in 1984 exceeded 45 mg/L (Ecobichon et al., 1985). Very high concentrations of nitrate, up to 467 mg/L and 1063 mg/L, have been previously reported in selected groundwater samples in Ontario (Egboka, 1984) and Manitoba (Kjartanson, 1986), respectively. A study of the groundwater characteristics for seven watersheds located in intensive agricultural areas was conducted in Quebec. The analysis of the data demonstrated that there was a high probability for wells in agricultural areas, particularly surface wells, to be affected by nitrates when compared to wells in a control watershed. Fifteen of the 59 wells (25.4%) monitored in the agricultural watershed had a nitrite-nitrate concentration (as nitrogen) above 1.5 mg/L; of these, 10 had a concentration above 3 mg/L, 8 of which were above 5 mg/L and 4 were above 10 mg/L. In comparison, of the 34 wells in the control watershed, 14 had a nitrite-nitrate concentration (as nitrogen) above 1.5 mg/L; 4 wells had a concentration above 3 mg/L; one well was above 5 mg/L and none had a concentration above 10 mg/L (Gouvernement du Québec, 2004).

Another study conducted in Quebec revealed that intensive potato culture on sandy soil may impact the groundwater nitrate concentration. Randomly selected samples showed low concentrations of nitrate: 14 (19.7%) of the 71 wells had a nitrate concentration equal to or greater than 3 mg NO_3-N/L and 4 of the wells (5.6%) had nitrate concentration greater than 10 mg NO_3-N/L. However, in the localized area with sandy soil (within 2 km of the potato fields), nitrate has been detected at concentrations equal to or greater than 3 mg NO_3-N/L in 41 (54.7%) of the 75 tested wells and 10 (13.3%) wells had concentration greater than 10 mg NO_3-N/L. According to the study, nitrate contamination seems to concentrate in sand point wells (Levallois et al., 1998).

In some cases, groundwater quality studies have focused on the water quality of domestic wells located on farms. A 1992 groundwater quality survey of 1,292 domestic wells located on farms in Ontario reported that 14% of the wells had nitrate concentrations above 10 mg NO_3-N/L (Goss et al., 1998). Similarly, Fitzgerald et al. (1997) reported that 6% of 816 farm wells sampled in 1995 and 1996 had nitrate concentrations greater than 10 mg NO_3-N/L. The mean concentration for all of the wells was 2.23 mg NO_3-N/L.

In Manitoba, 12.5% of raw well water samples analysed from 2002 to 2008 contained nitrate at concentrations higher than 45 mg/L, compared with 1.2% of surface water supplies. However, none of the supplies exceeded 45 mg/L of nitrate during the period 2009-2011. (Manitoba Conservation and Water Stewardship, 2011).

In British Columbia, nitrate levels exceeded 45 mg/L in almost 60% of the 450 well water samples collected in the Fraser Valley. Similar to surface water supplies, average concentrations of nitrate in British Columbia groundwater appear to have gradually increased between 1975 and 1990 as a result of increased population and intensive agricultural use (Liebscher et al., 1992). In a more recent study of nitrate in a major aquifer in British Columbia, nitrate concentrations in domestic and municipal wells ranged from 4.1 to 113.7 mg/L; 10 of the 25 wells contained nitrate at levels above 45 mg/L (Wassenaar et al., 2005).

Although nitrate concentrations may be high in drinking water, nitrite levels are normally lower. The nitrite concentrations in drinking water are usually in the range of a few milligrams per litre or less (WHO, 2007). Chloramination may increase the potential for nitrite formation within drinking water distribution systems. Nitrite is not routinely monitored in all jurisdictions. However, where it is monitored, surveillance data obtained from provincial and territorial data sets demonstrate that nitrite is seldom found in Canadian drinking water samples. For example, in a survey conducted by Environment New Brunswick (1983), nitrite levels in municipal water supplies were below 0.03 mg/L, and the highest level reported was 0.3 mg/L. In another survey of groundwater sources in an agricultural area in 1984 (Ecobichon et al., 1985), nitrite levels exceeded 3.3 mg/L in only one well, whereas 20% of the 300 wells sampled had nitrate concentrations that exceeded 44 mg/L. This one high nitrite concentration was clearly attributable to contamination by surface water and manure runoff in the month of April. In Nova Scotia, 995 drinking water samples from registered and municipal drinking water systems collected in the period 2000-2009 were analyzed for nitrite. The calculated average concentration of nitrite was 0.15 mg/L, and the nitrite concentration was above 3.2 mg/L in only one sample (5 mg/L) (Nova Scotia Environment, 2010). Data from the remaining provinces and territories collected in the period from 2000 to 2009 indicate that no nitrite was detected at levels above 3.2 mg/L and that the mean nitrite concentration was below 0.1 mg/L.

5.2   Food

Nitrite and nitrate are found in many food commodities, either as natural components or as intentional additives. Vegetables and cured meats represent the main source of these compounds in diet, but they can also be found, to a lesser extent, in fish and dairy products. Nitrate and nitrite can be added as preservatives to some food items to protect them from the growth of *Clostridium botulinum* (which causes botulism) or to enhance their colour (characteristic pink colour of cured meat) (Food Safety Network, 2010).

Nitrate can be found at high concentrations, ranging from 200 to 2500 mg/kg, in vegetables and fruits (Van Duijvenboden and Matthijsen, 1989). Vegetables constitute a major source of nitrate, providing over 85% of the average daily human dietary intake (Gangolli et al., 1994). Many vegetables have been reported to contain high levels of nitrate, including lettuce, spinach, red beets, fennel, cabbage, parsley, carrots, celery, potatoes, cucumbers, radishes and leeks (Pennington, 1998). The concentration of nitrite in vegetables and fruits is lower than that of nitrate, at less than 10 mg/kg, and it rarely exceeds 100 mg/kg (WHO, 2007). However,

vegetables that have been damaged, improperly stored, pickled or fermented may have nitrite levels up to 400 mg/kg (IARC, 2010).

Fresh meat normally contains low levels of nitrate and nitrite (Walker, 1990). However, meat and products that are cured contain much higher levels of nitrate and nitrite, depending on the amounts added as a preservative and on the curing process used (Gangolli et al., 1994). Meat products may contain nitrate at levels of < 2.7–945 mg/kg and nitrite at levels of < 0.2–64 mg/kg (ECETOC, 1988). Health Canada has limited the amount of nitrite and nitrate that can be added to meat products to 200 mg/kg (Food Safety Network, 2010).

Nitrate can also be found in dairy products at levels of < 3–27 mg/kg and nitrite at levels of < 0.2–1.7 mg/kg (ECETOC, 1988). Total nitrate exposure is negligible in breast milk; however, for bottle-fed infants consuming formula prepared with drinking water, this can be a substantial exposure pathway (OEHHA, 1997).

Levels of nitrate and nitrite in food commodities were measured as part of the total diet study conducted in Ottawa, Ontario, in 2000. Nitrite was found in negligible concentrations in cheese, cottage cheese, butter and margarine. The highest levels of nitrite found were in wieners and sausages, at 15.1 mg/kg, in luncheon meats and cold cuts, at 11.6 mg/kg, and in hot dogs, at 11.1 mg/kg. High levels of nitrate were also found in wieners and sausages, at 34.7 mg/kg, and in luncheon meats and cold cuts, at 41.2 mg/kg, but the highest levels of nitrate were found in soya-based infant formula, at 45.9 mg/kg, and in dinners prepared with meat, poultry and vegetables, at 43.7 mg/kg (Health Canada, 2003a).

A similar total diet study conducted in St. John's, Newfoundland and Labrador, in 2001 also measured nitrate and nitrite in food commodities. Nitrite was found in negligible concentrations in various food items, including cheese, cottage cheese, meat, poultry or eggs, and margarine. The highest levels of nitrite found were in luncheon meats and cold cuts, at 6.78 mg/kg, and in wieners and sausages, at 5.20 mg/kg. The highest levels of nitrate found were in frozen entrees, at 6.68 mg/kg, in processed cheese, at 5.11 mg/kg, and in luncheon meats and cold cuts, at 4.46 mg/kg. In this study, the level of nitrate in soy-based formula was found to be 1.86 mg/kg, much lower than in the Ottawa study (Health Canada, 2003b).

The total dietary intakes of nitrate and nitrite from the total diet studies performed in Ottawa (2000) and St. John's (2001) have not been calculated. However, average daily intakes from food in Canada have previously been estimated to be 44.3 mg for nitrate and 0.50 mg for nitrite, based on a survey of dietary habits (Choi, 1985). In the United States, the average adult daily intake from food has been estimated to be 40–100 mg for nitrate and 0.3–2.6 mg for nitrite (OEHHA, 1997). Other reported estimates of daily intake from many different countries are between 53 and 350 mg for nitrate and between 0 and 20 mg for nitrite (Pennington, 1998).

5.3 Air

In 1990, the annual average concentration of nitrate in ambient air was 0.88 µg/m^3 for 34 communities in 50 sampling locations across Canada (Environment Canada, 1992). The average trend of aerosol nitrate concentrations measured at a station located in Nunavut from 1980 to 2007 was below 0.10 µg/m^3. The highest levels of aerosol nitrate measured at this northern Canadian location were about 0.40–0.55 µg/m^3 between the years 2000 and 2005 (Environment Canada, 2010). Levels of nitrite were measured in Edmonton, Alberta, monthly from November 1982 to October 1983.

Atmospheric nitrate concentrations were measured for several years of continuous sampling in a Pacific island network (Prospero and Savoie, 1989). The annual mean levels of nitrate aerosols measured for all the stations varied between 0.11 and 0.36 $\mu g/m^3$. The lowest concentrations (mean 0.11 $\mu g/m^3$) were constantly obtained at three South Pacific stations, where the effect of continental sources is minimal, whereas the highest nitrate concentrations (mean 0.36 $\mu g/m^3$) occurred in the central North Pacific.

In the Netherlands, the mean monthly nitrate concentrations in the atmosphere were measured using a monitoring network between the summer of 1979 and the winter of 1986. The concentrations obtained ranged from 1.5 to 9.1 $\mu g/m^3$ (Janssen et al., 1989).

5.4   Consumer products

Nitrate and nitrite exposure has been reported to occur from certain medications and volatile nitrite inhalants. Medications that have been reported in cases of nitrate or nitrite toxicity include quinine derivatives (anti-malarials), nitroglycerine, bismuth subnitrite (anti-diarrhoeal) and isosorbide dinitrate/tetranitrates (vasodilators). In addition, infants and children may be exposed to nitrate through silver nitrate application used in burn treatments (ATSDR, 2007). It has also been reported that household products containing amyl, butyl, isobutyl and cyclohexyl nitrites, such as air fresheners and other deodorizers, can be used as deliberate inhalants by adolescents and adults (U.S. EPA, 2007a).

5.5   Soil

Information on exposure of the general population to nitrate and nitrite in soil is not reported in the literature. Residual inorganic nitrogen levels in soil in Canada, predominantly in the form of nitrate, have been reported in the literature (Drury et al., 2007; Agriculture and Agri-Food Canada, 2010). However, as nitrate is highly soluble and weakly retained by soil, it readily leaches into groundwater or surface water (IARC, 2010). Therefore, the study of exposure to nitrate from environmental media has focused on its presence in groundwater and surface water. A national study on the potential risk of water contamination by excess nitrogen in soil found that in some agricultural areas in Canada, nitrate concentrations in drainage water may be greater than 10 mg NO3-N/L as a result of excess nitrogen present in the soil (Agriculture and Agri-Food Canada, 2010).

6.0   Analytical methods

The U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) currently has three approved analytical methods (Method 300.0 revision 2.1, Method 300.1 revision 1.0, Method 352.1 and Method 353.2 revision 2.1) for the analysis of nitrate and nitrite in drinking water (U.S. EPA, 2007b). The following methods, developed by voluntary consensus standard organizations, are also available for the analysis of nitrate and nitrite. The cited methods in the 18th, 19th, 20th and 21st editions of the *Standard Methods for Water and Wastewater* as well as the online versions and selected ASTM International methods have been approved by the U.S. EPA (2007b, 2009a):

- Ion chromatography methods: SM 4110 B (APHA et al., 1992, 1995, 1998, 2005), SM 4110-B-00 (APHA et al., 2000), SM 4500-NO_3-H-00 (APHA et al., 2000), D4327-97 and D4327-03 (ASTM, 1997, 2003);
- Automated cadmium reduction methods: SM 4500-NO_3-F (APHA et al., 1992, 1995, 1998, 2005), online method SM 4500-NO_3-F-00 (APHA et al., 2000), D3867-99A (ASTM, 1999);

- Manual cadmium reduction methods: SM 4500-NO$_3$-E (APHA et al., 1992, 1995, 1998, 2005), D3867-99B (ASTM, 1999); and
- Automated hydrazine method: SM 4500-NO$_3$-H (APHA et al., 1992, 1995, 1998, 2005), SM 4500-NO$_3$-H-00 (APHA et al., 2000).

Additional methods using other analytical techniques have been developed for the analysis of either nitrate or nitrite. These methods have also been approved by the U.S. EPA (2009a):

- Ion selective electrode methods for analysis of nitrate: SM 4500-NO$_3$-D (APHA et al., 1992, 1995, 1998, 2005) and online method SM 4500-NO$_3$-D-00 (APHA et al., 2000);
- Spectrophotometric methods for analysis of nitrite: SM 4500-NO$_2$-B (APHA et al., 1992, 1995, 1998, 2005) and online method SM 4500-NO$_2$-00 (APHA et al., 2000).

EPA Method 300.0 revision 2.1 and EPA Method 300.1 revision 1.0 are based on ion chromatography and have method detection limits (MDLs) of 0.002 mg NO$_3$-N/L (equivalent to 0.009 mg NO$_3^-$/L) for nitrate and 0.004 mg NO$_2$-N/L (equivalent to 0.013 mg NO$_2^-$/L) for nitrite. The methods use injection of a small sample volume (2–3 mL) into an ion chromatograph for analysis of a variety of inorganic substances. The anions of interest are separated and measured using a system composed of a guard column, an analytical column, a suppressor device and a conductivity detector. Samples to be analysed for nitrate or nitrite individually should be cooled to 4°C and analysed within 48 hours. Samples for combined nitrate and nitrite analysis should be acidified using sulphuric acid to a pH less than 2 and analysed within 28 days (U.S. EPA, 1993).

APHA et al. (1992, 1995, 1998, 2005) and ASTM (1997) have two standard methods that are equivalent to EPA Method 300.0 revision 2.1: SM 4110 B and ASTM method D4327-97, respectively. These methods are based on ion chromatography with chemical suppression of eluent conductivity. A sample is passed through a series of ion exchangers where the anions are separated on the basis of their relative affinities for a low-capacity, strongly basic anion exchanger. The separated anions are then directed through a suppressor device and converted to their acid forms to be measured by conductivity. The MDLs for nitrate and nitrite using ASTM method D4327-97 are based on single U.S. EPA laboratory data and are 0.002 mg NO$_3$-N/L (equivalent to 0.009 mg NO$_3^-$/L) for nitrate and 0.004 mg NO$_2$-N/L (equivalent to 0.013 mg NO$_2^-$/L) for nitrite. The MDLs for nitrate and nitrite using SM 4110 B are a function of the sample size and conductivity scale used in the analysis; however, generally, minimum concentrations are near 0.1 mg-N/L (APHA et al., 1998). It should be noted, however, that the most recent version of APHA et al. (2005) methods, MDLs of 0.0027 mg NO$_3$-N/L (equivalent to 0.012 mg NO$_3^-$/L) for nitrate and 0.0037 mg NO$_2$-N/L (equivalent to 0.012 mg NO$_2^-$/L) are reported.

EPA Method 353.2 revision 2.1 uses an automated cadmium reduction with colorimetry method for the analysis of nitrite singly or nitrate and nitrite combined in drinking water. No MDLs are reported for this method. To use this method, a correction must be made for any nitrite present by analysing without the reduction step. A filtered sample is passed through a column of granulated copper-cadmium to reduce nitrate to nitrite. The nitrite is then formed into a coloured azo dye, which is measured colorimetrically. Samples must be preserved using sulphuric acid to a pH less than 2 and cooled to 4°C at the time of collection (U.S. EPA, 1993).

Standard Method SM 4500-NO$_3$-F (APHA et al., 1992, 1995, 1998, 2005) and ASTM method D3867-99A (ASTM, 1999) also use an automated cadmium reduction with colorimetry method and are equivalent to EPA Method 353.2 revision 2.1. The range reported for SM 4500-NO$_3$-F is 0.01–1.0 mg NO$_3$-N/L (equivalent to 0.04–4.4 mg NO$_3^-$/L), and this method is

recommended particularly for levels of nitrate below 0.1 mg NO_3-N/L (equivalent to 0.4 mg NO_3^-/L), where other methods might lack adequate sensitivity. No MDL was reported (APHA et al., 1998).

Two manual cadmium reduction methods have been approved for nitrate and nitrite analysis: Standard Method SM 4500-NO3-E (APHA et al., 1995, 1998, 2005) and ASTM method D3867-99B (ASTM, 1999). In these methods, nitrate is reduced to nitrite in the presence of cadmium by manually adding a sample to a reduction column and measured using colorimetry after addition of a colour reagent. No detection limits are reported for these methods.

Standard Method SM 4500-NO_3-D has also been approved for the analysis of nitrate using an ion electrode method. The nitrate ion electrode is a selective sensor that responds to nitrate ion activity between 0.14 and 1400 mg NO_3-N/L (equivalent to 0.62 and 6200 mg NO_3^-/L). Standard Method SM 4500-NO_2-B is a colorimetric method for analysis of nitrite. This method determines the concentration of nitrite through the formation of an azo dye that is then measured using colorimetry. It is suitable for concentrations of nitrite between 5 and 1000 µg NO_2-N/L (equivalent to 16.4 and 3286 µg NO_2^-/L). No detection limits are reported for these methods (APHA et al., 1995).

The current U.S. EPA practical quantitation limit (PQL), based on the capability of laboratories to measure the concentrations of nitrate and nitrite within reasonable limits of precision and accuracy, is 0.4 mg N/L (U.S. EPA, 1991). The PQL for nitrate was determined using data from Water Supply studies conducted prior to the final regulation. Due to a lack of analytical performance data for nitrite, the PQL for nitrite was assigned the value determined for nitrate based on the use of similar analytical methods (U.S. EPA, 1991). Recently, as part of the U.S. EPA's 6-year review, an assessment of the analytical data for nitrate and nitrite from the Performance Evaluation Program was conducted. The U.S. EPA reported variable passing rates for laboratories analysing samples at the current PQL concentration of 0.4 mg NO_3-N/L (equivalent to 1.8 mg NO_3^-/L) and therefore have not recommended lowering the PQL. However, the data for nitrite indicated a passing rate of greater than 75% for laboratories analysing samples with concentrations of 0.4 mg NO_2-N/L (equivalent to 1.3 mg NO_2^-/L), suggesting a possible reduction in the PQL (U.S. EPA, 2009b).

7.0   Treatment technology

Nitrite is relatively unstable, is rapidly converted to nitrate in the presence of oxygen and is typically not found in high concentrations in source water. Generally, the concentration of nitrite in surface water and groundwater is far below 0.1 mg NO_2-N/L (equivalent to 0.3 mg NO_2^-/L; U.S. EPA, 2002b). Therefore, drinking water treatment methods focus on the treatment of nitrate, and treatment methods for nitrite are rarely reported (Department of National Health and Welfare, 1993). Many of the treatment technologies discussed below are, however, expected to be effective for both nitrite and nitrate. Nitrite is more prevalent in the distribution systems of municipal water treatment plants that practise chloramination for secondary disinfection. Nitrite and, to a lesser extent, nitrate concentrations in the distribution system may be elevated when nitrification occurs (Cunliffe, 1991; Kirmeyer et al., 1995, 2004; WHO, 2007; Zhang et al., 2009b).

Control options for addressing nitrate concentrations above 10 mg NO_3-N/L (equivalent to 45 mg NO_3^-/L) in source water used for drinking include blending of nitrate-rich water with water of low nitrate content, the removal of nitrate by treatment processes at the public water supply or

household level and the selection of alternative low-nitrate sources. Control measures are also available for minimizing the occurrence of nitrite in distribution systems experiencing nitrification (Kirmeyer et al., 1995; Skadsen and Cohen, 2006).

Conventional water treatment processes (coagulation, sedimentation, filtration and chlorination) used at municipal water treatment plants are not effective for nitrate removal (Dahab, 1991; Kapoor and Viraraghavan, 1997; Beszedits and Walker, 1998; MWH, 2005; WHO, 2007). Nitrate is a stable and highly soluble ion with low potential for co-precipitation and adsorption. Effective technologies for the removal of nitrate from municipal water supplies include ion exchange, biological denitrification, reverse osmosis and electrodialysis (Dahab, 1991; Kapoor and Viraraghavan, 1997; Beszedits and Walker, 1998; Shrimali and Singh, 2001; MWH, 2005). The treatment processes that are capable of nitrate removal at the residential scale include reverse osmosis, distillation and ion exchange.

7.1   Municipal scale

Depending on the design and operation of the treatment plant, ion exchange, biological denitrification, reverse osmosis and electrodialysis processes are capable of removing over 80% of nitrate from water (Beszedits and Walker, 1998) to achieve effluent concentrations of nitrate as low as 3 mg NO_3-N/L(equivalent to 13 mg NO_3^-/L). Ion exchange, reverse osmosis and biological denitrification are the most commonly reported treatment technologies for the municipal-scale removal of nitrate in drinking water (Dahab, 1991; Green and Shelef, 1994; Clifford and Liu, 1995; Wachinski, 2006). Electrodialysis is less commonly reported, however, it is also effective for the reduction of nitrate in drinking water (Dahab, 1991; Hell et al., 1998). Detailed information on the effectiveness and operational considerations of the various treatment technologies for nitrate removal are available in reviews conducted by Dahab (1991), Clifford and Liu (1995), Kapoor and Viraraghavan (1997), Meyer et al. (2010) and Seidel et al. (2011).

The selection of an appropriate treatment process for a specific water supply will depend on many factors, including the characteristics of the raw water supply, the source and concentration of nitrite and nitrate, the operational conditions of the specific treatment method and the utility's treatment goals. Historically, nitrate treatment plants have been designed and operated to achieve nitrate concentrations slightly below 10 mg NO_3-N/L (equivalent to 45 mg NO_3^-/L), however, these technologies are capable of consistently achieving nitrate concentrations of 5 mg NO_3-N/L (equivalent to 22 mg NO_3^-/L). Treatment plants should strive to minimize nitrate levels in the treated water.

7.1.1   Ion exchange

Ion exchange is a physicochemical process in which there is an exchange of ions in the raw water with ions within the solid phase of a resin. Ion exchange is currently the most common nitrate removal process for municipal-scale treatment. Several studies have demonstrated that it is an effective treatment method for the removal of nitrate from drinking water (Lauch and Guter, 1986; Richard, 1989; Fletcher et al., 1991; Rogalla et al., 1991; Andrews and Harward, 1994; Clifford and Liu, 1995; Ruppenthal, 2004, 2007; Wang et al., 2007). A conventional ion exchange process involves the exchange of nitrate ions (anions) in the source water with chloride ions on the resin material (Clifford, 1999; Wachinski, 2006). As nitrate displaces chloride on the resin, the nitrate capacity of the resin is gradually exhausted resulting in effluent nitrate concentrations that increase with the volume of water that has been treated (nitrate breakthrough). Once the resin has

reached its capacity (i.e., when the nitrate ion begins to appear in significant concentration in the column effluent) the resin must be regenerated using a sodium chloride (salt) solution to reverse the process. Regeneration results in a brine waste stream that contains high nitrate concentrations and must be disposed of appropriately.

Exchange resins exhibit a degree of selectivity for various ions, depending on the concentration of ions in solution and the type of resin selected. Strong base anion and nitrate-selective resins are typically used for nitrate removal. The ion exchange capacity and the selectivity of the resin are important considerations when selecting a resin. Traditional strong base anion exchange resins have a greater preference for sulphate ions than nitrate ions. Therefore, the effectiveness of these types of resins can be limited when the sulphate concentration in the source water is high. Clifford (1990, 2011) reported that the number of bed volumes that can be treated before nitrate breakthrough occurs can decrease significantly when sulphate is present. A decrease of greater than 120 bed volumes was reported when the sulphate concentration in the source water was 100 mg/L in comparison with a concentration of 40 mg/L. Chromatographic peaking can occur when a system is operated beyond nitrate breakthrough, causing the effluent nitrate concentration to be greater than the influent nitrate concentration due to sulphate ions displacing nitrate ions on the resin. Operating ion exchange columns in parallel at different stages of exhaustion can increase column run times and decrease chromatographic peaking (Clifford, 2011). In addition, nitrate-selective resins have been developed and may be a more suitable choice for source water with high sulphate concentrations (Guter, 1981, 1995; Liu and Clifford, 1996).

A common practice in the treatment of nitrate using ion exchange has been to conduct bypass blending, which involves diverting a portion of the influent flow around the treatment vessel and blending the diverted water with the treated effluent water (Clifford, 1999). As ion exchange resins can produce effluent water with minimal concentrations of nitrate, bypass blending has been used as a strategy to reduce treatment costs and achieve the required (regulated) concentration. Depending on the influent nitrate concentration, water treatment plants have typically bypassed between 10% and 50% of the influent water (Clifford, 1990, Clifford et al., 2011). Another approach that has been used to reduce costs during the operation of ion exchange treatment plants is to practise partial regeneration of the resin, which typically involves removal of only 50–60% of the exchanged nitrate on the resin (Clifford and Liu, 1995). This results in the presence of some nitrate in the treated water; however, this can be acceptable if the concentrations remain below the regulatory limit for nitrate or if bypass blending is conducted. Utilities need to give careful consideration to the level of nitrate breakthrough, the percentage of raw water that bypasses ion exchange treatment and the use of partial regeneration when determining the lowest achievable nitrate concentration using ion exchange treatment.

Many studies of full-scale ion exchange treatment plants for nitrate removal have been reported in the literature (Lauch and Guter, 1986; Richard, 1989; Dahab, 1991; Fletcher et al., 1991; Rogalla et al., 1991; Clifford and Liu, 1995; Ruppenthal, 2004, 2007; Wang et al., 2007). Treatment at these plants has generally been based on minimizing the use of regenerant and the volume of waste brine produced by bypassing a certain percentage of the raw water around the ion exchange units and operating these units to a predetermined level of nitrate breakthrough. A 3.8 ML/day full-scale ion exchange plant has been in operation since 1984 and has effectively reduced concentrations of nitrate in groundwater from 15 to below 8 mg NO_3-N/L (equivalent to 67 and 35 mg NO_3^-/L; Lauch and Guter, 1986). The process uses a strong base anion resin with a capacity of approximately 1.3 eq/L and three reaction vessels with 0.9 m of resin bed depth and

empty bed contact times for each vessel of 2.54 minutes. The ion exchange units treat water to nitrate levels of 2–5 mg NO_3-N/L (equivalent to 9 and 22 mg NO_3^-/L) with run lengths of 260 bed volumes. An effluent concentration of 7 mg NO_3-N/L (equivalent to 31 mg NO_3^-/L) from the plant is achieved by treating 70% of the influent water with ion exchange and blending the remaining 30% of the influent water with the treated water. The resin is partially regenerated using a 6% sodium chloride solution with brine disposal to the municipal wastewater treatment plant (Lauch and Guter, 1986). A 4.5 ML/day full-scale ion exchange treatment plant with an average raw water nitrate concentration of 58 mg NO_3^-/L (13 mg NO_3-N/L) was capable of achieving an effluent nitrate concentration of 45 mg NO_3^-/L (equivalent to 10 mg NO_3-N/L) using a nitrate-selective resin with three vessels in series followed by blending with raw water. The blended plant effluent water comprised 30% ion exchange treated water and 70% raw water with nitrate breakthrough occurring at approximately 250 bed volumes. The resin was regenerated using a 6% sodium chloride solution, with spent brine discharged to a river (Andrews and Harward, 1994). Rogalla et al. (1991) reported data from an ion exchange plant that achieved lower treated water nitrate concentrations without conducting bypass blending. A 160 m^3/h plant treating surface water with nitrate concentrations ranging between 10 and 37 mg NO_3-N/L (equivalent to 44 and 164 NO_3^-/L) achieved average effluent concentrations of 2.3 mg NO_3-N/L (equivalent to 10.2 NO_3^-/L) without blending. The resin capacity was 1.2 eq/L and was exhausted after 400 bed volumes. The resin regenerant waste was sent to the municipal wastewater system (Rogalla et al., 1991).

Disposal of the resin regenerant is a major consideration for ion exchange treatment plants. Seidel et al. (2011) discuss several resin regenerant disposal options that are available to utilities including discharge to wastewater systems, waste volume reduction using drying beds, off-site approved land application and deep well injection. Since nitrate laden brine disposal is generally costly significant research into reducing the volume of the brine waste stream through recycling and/or treatment of the waste has been conducted. Several researchers have examined combining ion exchange and biological denitrification processes to reduce the concentration of nitrate in the regenerant brine (Liu and Clifford, 1996; Van der Hoek et al., 1998; Lehman et al., 2010). In this process, nitrate is removed from the source water using ion exchange followed by NaCl regeneration and subsequent biological denitrification of the spent brine to remove nitrate prior to reuse. Liu and Clifford (1996) conducted a pilot study examining the effectiveness of a sequencing batch reactor to biologically denitrify the spent regenerant brine. The denitrified brine was then filtered, sodium chloride was added and the brine was reused as regenerant. Results indicated that brine denitrification and reuse were feasible with conventional and nitrate-selective resins and were capable of reducing salt consumption and waste discharge by over 90%. More recently, pilot-scale testing demonstrated that ion exchange with brine denitrification using a fluidized bed reactor followed by brine reuse can be used successfully for nitrate treatment (Lehman et al., 2010).

Other innovative solutions to managing high concentrations of nitrate in source water have been implemented. Jones et al. (2007) reported on a combination of ion exchange, blending two different source waters and source water storage with biological denitrification to manage nitrate concentrations in the treated water. In spring, when the groundwater nitrate concentrations are 13.9 mg NO_3-N/L (equivalent to 62 mg NO_3^-/L), the well water at the first plant is supplemented with low-nitrate surface water from a nearby gravel pit, prior to filtration and disinfection. A second treatment plant uses water from an infiltration gallery located next to a surface water

supply that has seasonal nitrate concentrations as high as 18 mg NO_3-N/L (equivalent to 80 mg NO_3^-/L). The corresponding peak nitrate concentration, seen in the water from the infiltration galleries, was 10 mg NO_3-N/L (equivalent to 45 mg NO_3^-/L). This lower nitrate concentration was achieved through bank filtration and biological denitrification of stored pond water that infiltrated into the galleries.

The major operational considerations when using ion exchange treatment include nitrate breakthrough and chromatographic peaking, disposal of the resin regenerant and increased corrosivity of the treated water (Clifford, 1990; Dahab, 1991; Clifford et al., 2011). The replacement of nitrate, sulphate and bicarbonate ions with chloride ions can cause mineral imbalances in the water that could increase the corrosive nature of the treated water (Schock and Lytle, 2011). This is principally due to an increase in the chloride concentrations and their possible influence on the calcium carbonate balance (i.e., hardness and buffering capacity). In some cases, post-treatment corrosion control measures must be taken to ensure that corrosion problems do not occur in the distribution system following treatment using ion exchange (Schock and Lytle, 2011). An additional consideration for utilities using strong base anion exchange resins is the potential for the release of nitrosamines from the resin. Kemper et al. (2009) found that new resin or resin that is exposed to disinfectants (chlorine and chloramines) may release nitrosamines due to shedding of manufacturing impurities (Kemper et al., 2009).

Several modified ion exchange treatment processes that result in low-brine usage have recently been reported. These processes are proprietary and include magnetic ion exchange (MIEX [®]), continuous ion exchange separation (ISEP [®]), and Basin Water and Envirogen systems (Seidel et al., 2011).

Magnetic ion exchange systems (MIEX [®]) use a resin comprised of small magnetic particles that are fluidized in reactor vessels which are placed in series. The system operates in a continuous countercurrent flow mode enabling the spent resin to be continuously regenerated. The magnetized resin particles settle to the bottom of the reactor quickly and can then be removed, regenerated and then continuously returned to the top of the reactor. This process results in lower waste brine volumes and eliminates the risk of chromatographic peaking of nitrate in the treated water. Full-scale magnetic ion exchange treatment systems have been reported for the removal of dissolved organic carbon (Warton et al., 2007) and more recently for nitrate removal (Seidel et al., 2011). A 0.1 ML/day magnetic ion exchange plant has effectively achieved an effluent nitrate goal of less than 8 mg NO_3-N/L (equivalent to 35 mg NO_3^-/L) from an average influent nitrate concentration in groundwater of 14 mg NO_3-N/L (equivalent to 62 mg NO_3^-/L; Seidel et al., 2009). The process has a design regeneration rate of 125 BV (30 litres of resin are regenerated per 3700 L of water treated). The waste brine is stored in a tank and periodically disposed of using land application.

A continuous ion exchange separation system (ISEP [®]) has also been developed for removal of nitrate from drinking water. This process uses ion exchange columns placed in a carousel that rotates around a feed valve that is capable of delivering influent water, partially treated water, rinse water and regenerant to the various columns. The system can operate continuously with vessels in various phases of operation; feed, wash, rinse and regeneration. This process has been reported to produce more consistent treated water quality, eliminate chromatographic peaking and improve water recovery. A full-scale continuous ion exchange system was reported by Seidel et al. (2011). The 2.7 ML/day treatment systems uses 30 ion exchange vessels to reduce nitrate concentrations in groundwater ranging from 9 to 45 mg NO_3^-

N/L (equivalent to 40 and 200 mg NO_3^-/L) down to a treated water goal of 4 mg NO_3-N/L (equivalent to 18 mg NO_3^-/L). The resin is regenerated continuously and the system produces approximately 2800 L/hr of waste brine that is discharged to the municipal wastewater system.

A similar continuous ion exchange treatment system has been developed by Basin Water (now Envirogen Technologies Inc.) that uses stationary multiple ion exchange beds and valves operated in a staggered design. A 7.6 ML/day system is reported to reduce nitrate concentrations from 10 to 13 mg NO_3-N/L (equivalent to 45 and 56 mg NO_3^-/L) to 7.5 mg NO_3-N/L (equivalent to 33 mg NO_3^-/L).

Another modified ion exchange process, referred to as the CARIX process, uses a mixed bed with a weakly acidic and a strongly basic exchanger material for the removal of a variety inorganic minerals including calcium, magnesium, sulphate and nitrate. Although this process is not typically used for nitrate removal, it has been implemented successfully for nitrate removal at full-scale plants (Höll and Hagen, 2002). In this process, nitrate ions are exchanged for bicarbonate by the anion exchange material, using carbon dioxide as the chemical regenerant for the exchangers. A 120 m^3/h mixed bed ion exchange plant reduced a nitrate concentration of 9 mg NO_3-N/L (equivalent to 40 mg NO_3^-/L) to below 6 mg NO_3-N/L (equivalent to 27 mg NO_3^-/L) in the treated water. The plant used three ion exchange vessels in parallel with filter diameters of 3.2 m and 2.5 m of exchange material. The vessels treated only five bed volumes of water prior to regeneration (Höll and Hagen, 2002).

7.1.2 Reverse osmosis/nanofiltration

Reverse osmosis and, to a lesser extent, nanofiltration can be effective technologies for producing water with low nitrate concentrations (Cevaal et al., 1995; Paynor and Fabiani, 1995; Beszedits and Walker, 1998; Santafe-Moros et al., 2005). These processes are based on forcing water across a membrane under pressure while the ionic species, such as nitrate, are retained in the waste stream. Reverse osmosis is typically used for nitrate removal when high concentrations of other dissolved solids need to be removed. In general, when utilities are considering reverse osmosis systems primarily for nitrate removal, the systems must demonstrate high nitrate rejection, high water flux and a high recovery rate for the systems to be economically viable (Dahab, 1991; Duranceau, 2001; MWH, 2005). Reverse osmosis treatment systems typically require prefiltration for particle removal and often include other pretreatment steps, such as the addition of anti-scaling agents, prechlorination/dechlorination and softening. Post-treatment typically includes pH adjustment, addition of corrosion inhibitors and disinfection (Cevaal et al., 1995). Concentrate disposal must also be considered in the design and operation of reverse osmosis plants.

Data from a full-scale reverse osmosis plant for nitrate removal indicate that a nitrate concentration of 13.7 mg NO_3-N/L (equivalent to 61 mg NO_3^-/L) can be lowered to 0.58 mg NO_3-N/L (equivalent to 2.6 mg NO_3^-/L) using spiral wound polyamide thin-film composite membranes. The plant has a capacity of 630 m^3/h of permeate which is supplemented with 209 m^3/h of blended water with a final nitrate concentration goal of less than 8 mg NO_3-N/L (equivalent to 35 mg NO_3^-/L). A two- stage unit was used to achieve a recovery of 80% at a feed pressure of 170 psi (1172 kPa). Pretreatment includes filtration and addition of acid and anti-scalant, and post-treatment consists of degassing (carbon dioxide) and addition of caustic, chlorine and zinc orthophosphate (Cevaal et al., 1995). Schoeman and Steyn (2003) reported data from a small reverse osmosis plant that is capable of rejecting high concentrations of nitrate in the

source water. The 55 m^3/d plant operates with a 50% water recovery and a pressure of 1375 kPa. A nitrate rejection of between 96% and 98% was achieved in the plant with permeate concentrations lowered to less than 5 mg NO$_3$-N/L (equivalent to 22 mg NO$_3^-$/L) from a feed concentration that varied between 42 and 53 mg NO$_3$-N/L (equivalent to 186 and 235 mg NO$_3^-$/L).

More recently, pilot-scale testing has been conducted on the use of ultra low pressure reverse osmosis (ULPRO) membranes for the removal of nitrogen species. ULPRO membranes have the advantage of requiring lower operating pressures and therefore have lower operating costs. Drewes et al. (2008) demonstrated that ULPRO membranes are capable of rejecting over 90% of nitrate in the feed water. The concentration of nitrate in the treated water was consistently below 1 mg NO$_3$-N/L (equivalent to 5 mg NO$_3^-$/L), whereas feed water nitrate concentrations varied between 3 and 11 mg NO$_3$-N/L (equivalent to 13 and 49 mg NO$_3^-$/L). The membrane system was operated at a recovery of 82% and a feed pressure of 130 psi (900 kPa). The authors noted that membrane compaction and fouling increased the feed pressure required up to 160 psi (1103 kPa) following 1 month of operation.

Bench- and pilot-scale testing has also been conducted to evaluate the effectiveness of nanofiltration membranes for nitrate removal. It has been demonstrated that, in general, membranes with smaller pore sizes are required to achieve a rejection of greater than 75% of nitrate (Van der Bruggen et al., 2001). A laboratory-scale study evaluated the effectiveness of four nanofiltration membranes for pesticide and nitrate removal. It was found that one membrane with small pore sizes was capable of rejecting 76% of nitrate from 10 mg NO$_3$-N/L (equivalent to 45 NO$_3^-$/L) in the influent water to achieve 2.5 mg NO$_3$-N/L (equivalent to 11 mg NO$_3^-$/L) in the treated water (Van der Bruggen et al., 2001). Pilot plant testing of nanofiltration membranes found that only one of the four thin-film composite polyamide membranes tested was capable of effectively rejecting nitrate. Greater than 90% rejection of nitrate was observed with an influent concentration of 100 mg NO$_3^-$/L (equivalent to 22.5 mg NO$_3$-N/L) (Santafe-Moros et al., 2005). Other research studies have found that nanofiltration membranes were not effective in removing nitrate from water (Bohdziewicz et al., 1999; Drewes et al., 2008). Therefore, testing of the nanofiltration membrane selected for nitrate removal will be an important step for utilities considering this treatment process.

Considerations when using reverse osmosis treatment include disposal of the reject water and possible increased corrosivity of the treated water (Schock and Lytle, 2011). Reverse osmosis rejects a significant portion of the influent water as contaminant-rich brine (Taylor and Wiesner, 1999), and the concentrate discharge must be disposed of appropriately. The removal of contaminants can cause mineral imbalances that could increase the corrosive nature of the treated water (Schock and Lytle, 2010). In most cases, post-treatment corrosion control measures need to be taken.

7.1.3   Electrodialysis/electrodialysis reversal
Electrodialysis is a membrane process that uses an electric potential for removing charged species from water. This electrochemical process removes cations and anions from the source water by forcing them through cation or anion exchange membranes in a stack of cation-anion membrane pairs under the influence of a DC voltage (AWWA, 1995). Nitrate is removed by moving from the influent water through the anion exchange membrane where it is then rejected by the cation exchange membrane and removed in the waste stream (Hell et al., 1998). Anion

exchange membranes that selectively remove nitrate have also been developed (Chebi and Hamano, 1995). The electrodialysis reversal process is based on reversing the polarity of the electrodes several times every hour of operation to alter the direction of ion movement, which greatly helps to reduce membrane scaling. In general, electrodialysis and electrodialysis reversal treatment systems produce less reject water and have lower power consumption than other membrane processes (Kapoor and Viraraghaven, 1997).

A full-scale electrodialysis treatment plant demonstrated that a raw water nitrate concentration of 36 mg NO_3-N/L could be reduced to 9 mg NO_3-N/L (equivalent to 40 mg NO_3^-/L) using three parallel membranes stacks each with a hydraulic capacity of 48 m^3/h. The concentrate was sent for treatment to the municipal wastewater treatment plant (Hell et al., 1998). Pilot-scale testing of an electrodialysis process using nitrate-selective membranes demonstrated a nitrate rejection of approximately 80% to achieve a nitrate concentration of 3 mg NO_3-N/L (equivalent to 13 mg NO_3^-/L) in the effluent. The system operated at 1 m^3/h using two stacks of membranes and a recovery rate of 95% (Chebi and Hamano, 1995).

Elmidaoui et al. (2002) reported results from a 24 m^3/d pilot-scale electrodialysis reversal plant that successfully reduced the nitrate concentration from 16 mg NO_3-N/L (equivalent to 71 mg NO_3^-/L) down to 2 mg NO_3-N/L (equivalent to 9 mg NO_3^-/L) at an 80% recovery rate. The plant was equipped with two membrane stacks in series with a total available membrane area of 500 cm^2 and an automatic polarity reversal every 20 minutes. A voltage of 24 V and a power consumption of 0.43 kWh/m^3 were used to achieve these results. Seidel et al. (2011) also reported data from a full-scale electrodialysis reversal treatment system that was capable of removing over 93% of nitrate to achieve a treated water nitrate concentration of 0.97 mg NO_3-N/L (equivalent to 4.3 mg NO_3^-/L). The system had three stages and operated at 90% water recovery. Additional laboratory- and pilot-scale studies have been conducted on electrodialysis treatment systems to evaluate system optimization, new membrane performance and effects of variable source water (Salem et al., 1995; Elhannouni et al., 2000; Sahli Menkouchi et al., 2006, 2008).

The main considerations for systems using electrodialysis and electrodialysis reversal for nitrate removal are the operational complexity of the system, disposal of the reject water and the need for pH adjustment of the treated water (Kapoor and Viraraghaven, 1997).

7.1.4   Biological denitrification

Biological denitrification treatment processes are based on the removal of nitrate in source water through the biological reduction of nitrate to nitrogen gas (denitrification) in an anoxic environment. The denitrification process used for potable water treatment requires the addition of an electron donor to the source water so that the nitrate can be biologically reduced to nitrogen. There are two main types of biological denitrification systems that are used for potable water treatment. Heterotrophic denitrification uses organic compounds, such as ethanol or acetic acid, as both the electron donor and carbon source. Autotrophic denitrification uses an inorganic compound such as hydrogen or sulphur as the electron donor and inorganic carbon such as carbon dioxide as the carbon source. Biological denitrification systems can be designed as fixed bed reactors, fluidized bed reactors, membrane bioreactors and membrane biofilm reactors. In general, biological denitrification treatment systems require post-treatment to remove biomass and biodegradable organic materials that are present in the reactor effluent. Typical post-treatment includes aeration, filtration, activated carbon and disinfection (MWH, 2005; Meyer et al., 2010).

Biological denitrification processes have been used in Europe for many years for the removal of nitrate from drinking water (Richard, 1989; Dahab, 1991; Rogalla et al., 1991; Dordelmann, 2009) and have more recently been considered in North America (Meyer et al., 2010). However, there is currently limited full-scale experience with biological denitrification in North America. Meyer et al. (2010) reported that the most common and effective biological denitrification systems are heterotrophic two-stage, fixed bed, upflow systems and autotrophic hydrogen-based membrane biofilm reactors. Design and operational considerations for biological denitrification plants include electron donor and nutrient dosing, dissolved oxygen, pH and temperature control as well as biofilm management (Meyer et al., 2010). The most important operational parameters identified are optimization of the nitrate surface-loading rates and substrate and nutrient dosing. Under dosing of the electron donor can result in insufficient nitrate removal or the formation of nitrite due to incomplete denitrification. Overdosing of electron donors can result in excess biodegradable matter in the reactor effluent (Dahab, 1991; Dordelmann, 2009; Meyer et al., 2010).

Several authors have reported on full-scale biological denitrification drinking water treatment plants encompassing a wide variety of reactor configurations, donor types and denitrification mechanisms (Richard, 1989; Dahab, 1991; Rogalla et al., 1991; Dordelmann, 2009; Meyer et al., 2010). In general, it is reported that biological denitrification can reduce nitrate concentrations in source water as high as 100 mg NO_3-N/L (equivalent to 443 mg NO_3^-/L) to concentrations approaching 1 mg NO_3-N/L (equivalent to 4 mg NO_3^-/L; Dahab, 1991).

Meyer et al. (2010) reported on five heterotrophic fixed bed denitrification plants using ethanol as the electron donor that were capable of reducing influent nitrate concentrations in the range of 10–15 mg NO_3-N/L (equivalent to 45-66 mg NO_3^-/L) down to 2–6 mg NO_3-N/L (equivalent to 9-27 mg NO_3^-/L). The operating conditions of one of the most efficient plants included four fixed bed heterotrophic bioreactors in series. At a flow rate of 300 m^3/h and a maximum nitrate loading rate of 1.5 kg-N/m^3-d, the plant is capable of removing over 90% of nitrate down to a concentration of less than 2 mg NO_3-N/L (equivalent to 9 mg NO_3^-/L). Post-treatment includes a two-stage filtration process—aerobic filtration with oxygen addition and activated carbon filtration, to remove excess gas, biomass and carbon sources—followed by disinfection (Mateju et al., 1992). Similarly, Dahab (1991) reported on several heterotrophic biological denitrification plants capable of achieving nitrate removal efficiencies ranging from 65% to 95% with influent nitrate concentrations between 14 and 20 mg NO_3-N/L (equivalent to 62 and 89 mg NO_3^-/L). Full-scale heterotrophic fluidized bed treatment plants have also been reported in the literature. Mateju et al. (1992) reported data from a fluidized- bed treatment plant using methanol as the electron donor and phosphate nutrient addition. The plant achieves a reduction in nitrate from 23 mg NO_3-N/L (equivalent to 102 mg NO_3^-/L) down to 6 mg NO_3-N/L (equivalent to 27 mg NO_3^-/L). The authors noted, however, that elevated nitrite concentrations were observed intermittently in the effluent water. Dahab (1991) reported a 63% nitrate removal efficiency of an influent nitrate concentration of 15 mg NO_3-N/L (equivalent to 66 mg NO_3^-/L) using a fluidized bed configuration.

Although less commonly used, autotrophic denitrification has also been implemented at full-scale treatment plants. A 50 m^3/h plant with an influent nitrate concentration of 18 mg NO_3-N/L (equivalent to 80 mg NO_3^-/L) is capable of achieving greater than 90% removal of nitrate to effluent concentrations of less than 1 mg NO_3-N/L (equivalent to 4 mg NO_3^-/L) at a nitrate loading rate of 0.25 kg-N/m^3 –d. The plant consists of nine fixed bed bioreactors fed raw water

that has been supersaturated with hydrogen and dosed with phosphate and carbon dioxide and post-treatment of aeration, two-layer filtration and ultraviolet disinfection (Gros et al., 1986). A 35 m^3/h full-scale autotrophic denitrification plant using a sulphur/limestone reactor was reported by Mateju et al. (1992). The process consists of vacuum deaeration of the raw water followed by upflow filtration in a bioreactor containing sulphur and limestone followed by aeration and artificial recharge. The plant achieves greater than 90% removal of nitrate with raw water containing 16–18 mg NO_3-N/L (equivalent to 71-80 mg NO_3^-/L).

Biological denitrification processes can be integrated with membrane technology using membrane bioreactors and membrane biofilm reactors. These combined technologies allow for retention of the biomass and in some cases the electron donors and nutrients so that post-treatment may not be as extensive as with conventional biological denitrification. There are many types of membrane systems that have been researched for this application, including extractive membrane bioreactors, ion exchange membrane bioreactors, gas transfer membrane bioreactors and pressure-driven membrane bioreactors (Velizarov et al., 2002; Matos et al., 2005; Xia et al., 2009; Meyer et al., 2010). It was reported that most of the research conducted on these systems has been at the bench or pilot scale, with limited full-scale applications (McAdam and Judd, 2006).

A 400 m^3/d full-scale membrane bioreactor with ethanol, phosphoric acid and powdered activated carbon addition and hollow fibre ultrafiltration membranes is capable of reducing a median source water nitrate concentration of 12 mg NO_3-N/L (equivalent to 53 mg NO_3^-/L) to less than 2 mg NO_3-N/L (equivalent to 9 mg NO_3^-/L) at a nitrate loading rate of 0.1 kg NO_3-N/m^3-d. The treated water from the membranes has a low organic carbon concentration, no nitrites and good biological stability (Urbain et al., 1996). Meyer et al. (2010) reported that a pilot-scale hydrogen-based autotrophic membrane biofilm reactor with hollow fibre membranes was capable of completely removing nitrate at a concentration of 19.6 mg NO_3-N/L (equivalent to 87 mg NO_3^-/L) at a surface loading rate of 3.0 g-N/m^2-d. The authors noted that when the influent nitrate concentration was increased to 32.1 mg NO_3-N/L (142 mg NO_3^-/L), incomplete denitrification produced an effluent nitrite concentration of 2.5 mg NO_2-N/L (equivalent to 8 mg NO_2^-/L).

As nitrite is an intermediate compound in the reduction of nitrate to nitrogen gas, utilities need to ensure that their systems are optimized so that the biological process is complete and nitrite is not present in the treated water.

7.1.5   Emerging treatment technologies

Several drinking water treatment technologies for nitrate are being developed but are still primarily in the experimental stage or do not have published information on the effectiveness of large-scale applications. Some of the emerging technologies include the following:

- Chemical denitrification: Kapoor and Viraraghavan (1997) and Shrimali and Singh (2001) reviewed and provided general information on several laboratory studies that have been conducted on the use of metals for the chemical reduction of nitrate to other nitrogen species. Chi et al. (2005) demonstrated that a 50% reduction in nitrate from an initial concentration of 1500 mg NO_3-N/L (equivalent to 6, 650 mg NO_3^-/L) could be achieved using metallic iron when water was acidified to a pH of 5. Luk and Au-Yeung (2002) reported a maximum nitrate removal of 62% to achieve treated water concentrations of 8.3 mg NO_3-N/L (equivalent to 37 mg NO_3^-/L) using 300 mg/L of aluminum powder and a pH of 10.7. Seidel et al. (2008) conducted pilot-scale testing of sulphur-modified iron for the chemical reduction of nitrate.

Results indicated that the highest nitrate removal, from approximately 15 mg NO_3-N/L to 10 mg NO_3-N/L (equivalent to 66 to 45 mg NO_3^-/L), occurred at a pH of 6.0 and an empty bed contact time of 30 minutes. The authors noted that a treated water goal of 8 mg NO_3-N/L (35 mg NO_3^-/L) was not achieved consistently during the pilot testing.

- Catalytic denitrification: Research studies have also examined the chemical denitrification of nitrate in the presence of catalyst (Reddy and Lin, 2000; Chen et al., 2003). Reddy and Lin (2000) conducted laboratory tests of catalytic denitrification using three catalysts: palladium, platinum and rhodium. Rhodium was the most effective catalyst for nitrate removal. The results demonstrated that addition of 0.5 g of rhodium per litre of water could decrease nitrate concentrations from 9 mg NO_3-N/L to 3 mg NO_3-N/L (equivalent to 40 to 13 mg NO_3^-/L) at a redox potential of −400 mV. Chen et al. (2003) found that a 4:1 palladium–copper combined catalyst maximized nitrate reduction to nitrogen gas. An initial nitrate concentration of 22.6 mg NO_3-N/L (equivalent to 100 mg NO_3^-/L) was reduced to less than 1 mg NO_3-N/L (equivalent to 5 mg NO_3^-/L) after 20 minutes of reaction time.
- Polyelectrolyte-enhanced ultrafiltration: Zhu et al. (2006) demonstrated greater than 90% removal of 60 mg NO_3-N/L (equivalent to 266 mg NO_3^-/L) using polyelectrolyte-enhanced ultrafiltration. The percentage of nitrate removed depended on the types of chelating polymers and the ultrafiltration membrane that was used in the study.

7.1.6   Nitrification in the distribution system

Nitrite and nitrate can be formed in the distribution system as a result of nitrification of excess ammonia that occurs naturally in the source water and is not removed prior to disinfection or in systems that add ammonia as part of chloramination for secondary disinfection. The potential increase of nitrite in the distribution system is significant, as, in some cases, the increase in nitrite due to nitrification may lead to a concentration that exceeds the guideline value of 1.0 mg NO_2-N/L (equivalent to 3 mg NO_2^-/L). In the case where a water treatment plant removes nitrate and nitrite to levels that just meet the guideline values and the water system uses chloramines for disinfection, there is a potential for both nitrate and nitrite values to increase above the guideline values in the distribution system during a nitrification event (U.S. EPA, 2002b). However, when nitrite concentrations increase due to nitrification, the primary concern for utilities is that nitrite consumes chlorine and decomposes chloramines which results in an increase in microbial counts, including an increase in the potential presence of coliform bacteria in the distribution system (Smith, 2006).

Nitrification is a sequential microbiological process where ammonia is oxidized to form nitrite and then nitrite is oxidized to form nitrate. Two groups of chemolithotrophic nitrifying organisms, ammonia-oxidizing bacteria (ammonia to nitrite) and nitrite-oxidizing bacteria (nitrite to nitrate), carry out this process (Kirmeyer et al., 1995, 2004; U.S. EPA, 2002b). Nitrification can have adverse impacts on water quality, including increasing nitrite and nitrate levels, increasing bacterial regrowth, and lowering chloramine residuals, pH and dissolved oxygen (Kirmeyer et al., 1995; Odell et al., 1996; Wilczak et al., 1996; U.S. EPA, 2002b; Kirmeyer et al., 2004; Zhang et al., 2009b). Studies have also reported possible links between corrosion problems and nitrification (Edwards and Dudi, 2004; Zhang et al., 2009a, 2010).

Nitrification in distribution systems where chloramine is used as a secondary disinfectant, can increase nitrite levels on the order of 0.05–0.5 mg NO_2-N/L (equivalent to 0.16-1.6 mg NO_2^-/L), although increases greater than 1 mg NO_2-N/L (equivalent to 3 mg NO_2^-/L) have been

noted, particularly in stagnant parts of the distribution system (Wilczak et al., 1996; Zhang et al., 2009b). It was noted that maximum nitrite concentrations occur in areas of the distribution system with the longest detention time, such as at the extremities of the system or dead ends (Kirmeyer et al., 1995; Harrington et al., 2002). The U.S. EPA (2002b) reported that increases in nitrite levels during nitrification episodes more frequently range between 0.015 and 0.1 mg NO_2-N/L (equivalent to 0.048 and 0.32 mg NO_2^-/L). Generally, increases in nitrate concentrations during nitrification are small; however, increases of more than 1 mg NO_3-N/L (equivalent to 5 mg NO_3^-/L) have been reported (Cunliffe, 1991; Kirmeyer et al., 1995). In some cases, increases in nitrate concentrations have been observed with no corresponding increase in nitrite concentrations, indicating a nitrification episode with complete nitrification (Kirmeyer et al., 1995; Wilczak et al., 1996).

Factors contributing to nitrification in the distribution system include warm water temperatures, pH, a low Cl_2:NH_3-N ratio and the concurrent increase of free ammonia concentrations and chloramine residual. The optimum temperature for nitrifiers (nitrifying bacteria) to grow ranges between 20°C and 30°C (Baribeau, 2006). However, regrowth and nitrification can occur at temperatures as low as 5°C or even less in systems with long detention times (Pintar et al., 2000). Kors et al. (1998) discussed a case of nitrification under extreme cold-water conditions (below 4°C). An increase in temperature will increase the chloramine decomposition rate, which will subsequently promote nitrification, since more free ammonia will be released (Baribeau, 2006).

A number of distribution system parameters such as detention time, reservoir design and operation, presence of dead end mains, sediment and tuberculation in piping, biofilm, and the absence of sunlight can affect nitrification (Skadsen, 1993; Kirmeyer et al., 1995; 2004; U.S. EPA, 2002b; Zhang et al., 2009b; Baribeau, 2010). Harrington et al. (2002) and the U.S. EPA (2002b) noted that increases in nitrite up to 1 mg NO_2-N/L due to nitrification could theoretically occur in any system in which the total ammonia concentration entering the distribution system is greater than 1 mg-N/L. In theory, utilities using a CL_2:NH_3-N ratio of 3:1 could see increases of nitrite greater than 1 mg NO_2-N/L if a chloramine dose of 3 mg/L as Cl_2 is used in the treatment plant. A discussion of the optimal free ammonia and chlorine to ammonia-nitrogen ratio to minimize nitrification is provided in the guideline technical document for ammonia (Health Canada, 2013).

The formation of nitrite in combination with a decrease in chloramine residual and free ammonia concentrations in the distribution system may be used as an indicator of nitrification (Kirmeyer et al., 1995). Utilities that are chloraminating should monitor for nitrite and nitrate in the distribution system in addition to ammonia, total chlorine residual, HPC and other nitrification indicators. A site-specific evaluation is generally necessary to establish a nitrification monitoring program. The program should identify system-specific alert and action levels, which can be used to determine the appropriate level of action to address nitrification. The monitoring frequency of the parameters depends on the location and the purpose of the data. Changes in the trend of priority nitrification parameters (such as total chlorine residual, nitrite and nitrate) in the distribution system should trigger more frequent monitoring of other parameters such as free ammonia.

Some studies have proposed that a nitrite level of 0.05 mg NO_2-N/L (equivalent to 0.16 mg NO_2^-/L) may be used as a critical threshold indicator in nitrification. It is proposed that once this level is reached, severe nitrification may be occurring, and control measures need to be

implemented (Kirmeyer et al., 1995; Harrington et al., 2002; Pintar et al., 2005). However, Pintar et al. (2005) noted that full-scale data indicated that a nitrite level of 0.05 mg NO_2-N/L (equivalent to 0.16 mg NO_2^-/L) is too high to be used as a predictor of nitrification. Smith (2006) further suggested that a nitrite concentration of 0.015 mg NO_2-N/L (equivalent to 0.048 mg NO_2^-/L) should be used as an action level for utilities to address nitrification in the distribution system.

There are many preventive and control measures that can be taken to address nitrification. Any strategy should also ensure that other Guidelines for Canadian Drinking Water Quality are not exceeded. Detailed information on nitrification control in chloraminated systems is available in reports and reviews by Kirmeyer et al. (1995), Skadsen and Cohen (2006) and Zhang et al. (2009b). Preventive methods include control of water quality parameters (pH, free ammonia entering the distribution system, organic matter) and operating parameters (Cl_2:NH_3-N weight ratio and chloramine residual), corrosion control programs, distribution system pipe flushing, establishing booster chlorination or chloramination stations, temporary/seasonal free chlorination (breakpoint chlorination), and chlorite addition. Corrective methods are similar to the preventive methods and include distribution system pipe flushing, temporary/seasonal free chlorination (breakpoint chlorination), reservoir cycling or cleaning and chlorite addition. However, the addition of chlorite is considered to be controversial as its presence can lead to the formation of chlorate (Skadsen and Cohen, 2006). Utilities wishing to use chlorite addition as a control strategy should ensure that Health Canada's guidelines for chlorite and chlorate are not exceeded (Health Canada, 2008).

The different measures used to control the nitrification episodes vary in their effectiveness and their ability to provide long-term improvements in nitrification problems. For these reasons, comprehensive strategies aimed at the prevention of nitrification episodes are recommended over strategies aimed at controlling nitrification as they occur.

7.1.7   *Formation of nitrate or nitrite from other treatment technologies*

In some cases, other treatment methods may form nitrate or nitrite at the treatment plant. The principal by-products of UV photolysis of *N*-nitrosodimethylamine (NDMA) are dimethylamine (DMA) and nitrite (Bolton and Stefan, 2000; Mitch et al., 2003). When UV/hydrogen peroxide are applied, nitrate is the major degradation product (Bolton and Stefan, 2000).

The formation of nitrite has also been observed during disinfection using low-pressure UV light in source water containing nitrate. Lu et al. (2009) found that at a pH of 9.5, low-pressure UV treatment of water with an initial nitrate concentration of 10 NO_3-N/L produced up to 0.1 mg NO_2-N/L.

7.2   Residential scale

Municipal treatment of drinking water is designed to reduce contaminants to levels at or below guideline values. As a result, the use of residential-scale treatment devices on municipally treated water is generally not necessary but primarily based on individual choice. In cases where an individual household obtains its drinking water from a private well, a private residential drinking water treatment device may be an option for reducing nitrate and nitrite concentrations in drinking water. For most influent concentrations of nitrate in source water, residential treatment devices can remove nitrate from drinking water to concentrations below 45 mg NO_3^-/L

(equivalent to 10 mg NO_3-N/L). It is important to note that the removal efficiency will also depend on the effectiveness of the treatment device selected.

Before a treatment device is installed, the water should be tested to determine general water chemistry and verify the presence and concentrations of nitrate and nitrite in the source water. It should be noted that bacterial contamination of a well water supply can occur in conjunction with nitrate contamination. Therefore, the bacterial and chemical aspects of the water quality should be considered prior to selecting a water treatment device. Periodic testing by an accredited laboratory should be conducted on both the water entering the treatment device and the finished water to verify that the treatment device is effective. Devices can lose removal capacity through use and time and need to be maintained and/or replaced. Consumers should verify the expected longevity of the components in their treatment device as per the manufacturer's recommendations. Residential drinking water treatment processes can be routinely monitored to ensure that treatment units are performing optimally.

Health Canada does not recommend specific brands of drinking water treatment devices, but it strongly recommends that consumers use devices that have been certified by an accredited certification body as meeting the appropriate NSF International (NSF)/American National Standards Institute (ANSI) drinking water treatment unit standards. These standards have been designed to safeguard drinking water by helping to ensure the material safety and performance of products that come into contact with drinking water. Certified devices for the reduction of nitrate and nitrite from drinking water in residential systems generally rely on reverse osmosis (RO) or on ion exchange, although devices that rely on distillation treatment processes may also be available.

Certification organizations provide assurance that a product conforms to applicable standards and must be accredited by the Standards Council of Canada (SCC). In Canada, the following organizations have been accredited by the SCC to certify drinking water devices and materials as meeting NSF/ANSI standards (SCC, 2011):

- Canadian Standards Association International (www.csa-international.org);
- NSF International (www.nsf.org);
- Water Quality Association (www.wqa.org);
- Underwriters Laboratories Inc. (www.ul.com);
- Quality Auditing Institute (www.qai.org);
- International Association of Plumbing & Mechanical Officials (www.iapmo.org).

An up-to-date list of accredited certification organizations can be obtained from the SCC (www.scc.ca).

The NSF/ANSI standards for nitrate and nitrite removal currently require testing of a device for the reduction of 30 mg-N/L as nitrogen (27 mg NO_3-N/L plus 3 mg NO_2-N/L) to 10 mg-N/L of nitrogen, in which no more than 1 mg/L can be in the form of nitrite-nitrogen (NSF/ANSI 2009a, 2009b, 2009c). Distillation systems should only be installed at the point of use as the water they have treated may be corrosive to internal plumbing components.

Available data suggests that residential reverse osmosis units can achieve lower treated water nitrate concentrations, particularly when the source water nitrate concentration is below 17 mg NO_3-N/L (equivalent to 75 mg NO_3^-/L; U.S. EPA, 2002b, 2006b, 2007c). The U.S. EPA has reported on several studies evaluating POU as a compliance option for the removal of various contaminants. The reports assessed the effectiveness of residential reverse osmosis treatment devices for the removal of various contaminants, including nitrate. One study indicated that one

type of reverse osmosis device was consistently capable of removing an average influent nitrate concentration of 10 mg NO_3-N/L (equivalent to 45 mg NO_3^-/L) down to below 1 mg NO_3-N/L (equivalent to 5 NO_3^-/L) in the treated water (U.S. EPA, 2007c). Additional information on nitrate removal using several types of residential reverse osmosis devices also indicated that influent nitrate concentrations up to 11 mg NO_3-N/L (equivalent to 49 mg NO_3^-/L)could be lowered to less than 1 mg NO_3-N/L (equivalent to 5 mg NO_3^-/L; U.S. EPA, 2006b). The study concluded that reverse osmosis devices can have varying removal efficiencies which was attributed to the different types of membranes that were used in the units.

Although devices that are certified to NSF/ANSI Standard 58 verify only that a final concentration of less than 10 mg NO_3-N/L (equivalent to 45 mg NO_3^-/L) is achieved, select residential reverse osmosis devices are capable of achieving lower treated water concentrations. Accredited certification organizations report that 30 to 50% of the reverse osmosis devices certified for nitrate reduction are capable of achieving treated water concentrations below 5 mg NO_3-N/L (equivalent to 22 mg NO_3^-/L; NSF, 2012; WQA, 2012). Consumers may refer to the manufacturer's claims in its literature to obtain more information on the amount of nitrate and nitrite that a treatment device may remove, as well as operational and maintenance requirements. Routine testing monitoring of nitrate concentrations in the treated water can be conducted to determine if lower concentrations are being achieved.

Reverse osmosis systems are intended for point-of-use installation, as larger quantities of influent (incoming) water are needed to obtain the required volume of treated water, which is generally not practical for residential-scale point-of-entry systems. Reverse osmosis systems should only be installed at the point of use as the water they have treated may be corrosive to internal plumbing components. A consumer may need to pre-treat the influent water to reduce fouling and extend the service life of the membrane.

Ion exchange may also be a feasible technology for nitrate removal. Ion exchange technology is typically designed and constructed for residential use by drinking water treatment system providers or dealers. Health Canada strongly recommends that homeowners ensure that these systems are constructed using materials certified to NSF/ANSI Standard 61 (NSF/ANSI, 2009d). Ion exchange using a standard type 1 or type 2 polystyrene strong-base anion exchange resin can result in treated water nitrate concentrations that are higher than the source water nitrate concentrations (chromatographic peaking). Chromatographic peaking occurs because competing ions (such as sulphate) displace nitrate ions on the resin, typically when the ion exchange system is operated beyond nitrate breakthrough. The use of a nitrate-selective ion-exchange resin will prevent chromatographic peaking and is strongly recommended for residential nitrate removal. If a nitrate-selective resin is not available, homeowners whose source water contains sulphate should consider the use of an alternative treatment. It is important to routinely monitor the nitrate concentration in the water treated by ion exchange to ensure that the system is effectively removing nitrate and that chromatographic peaking is not occurring.

8.0   Kinetics and metabolism

Kinetic and metabolism studies are complicated by endogenously synthesized nitrite, independent of dietary or drinking water sources.

8.1   Absorption

After ingestion in food or water, nitrate and nitrite are rapidly and almost completely absorbed in the small intestine of humans and transferred to blood (bioavailability at least 92%); less than 2% of dietary nitrate intake reaches the terminal ileum (Mensinga et al., 2003). The fasting plasma nitrate concentration is between 0.25 and 2.7 mg/L (L'hirondel and L'hirondel, 2002). After human oral exposure to sodium nitrate at 470 µmol/kg bw, the plasma nitrate levels rise rapidly, within 5 minutes, reaching a maximum after about 40 minutes (Cortas and Wakid, 1991). The return to the pre-exposure plasma nitrate concentration is independent of the ingested quantity of nitrate; it may be achieved after 24–48 hours (L'hirondel and L'hirondel, 2002).

In a randomized open, three-way crossover study, seven women and two men received a single oral dose of 0.06 or 0.12 mmol of sodium nitrite per millimole haemoglobin and after 7 days received 0.12 mmol of sodium nitrite per millimole haemoglobin intravenously (Kortboyer et al., 1997). Gastrointestinal absorption was rapid, with peak plasma concentrations observed 15–30 minutes after dosing. Under fasting conditions, 90–95% of the oral dose of sodium nitrite was absorbed in the gastrointestinal tract. The bioavailability of sodium nitrite was 73–110% after the lower oral dose. Before absorption takes place, extensive nitrite metabolism in the gastrointestinal tract may result in a large proportion of nitrite being transformed to other nitrogen-containing species (see Section 9.3).

Nitrates can be absorbed by inhalation (e.g., from cigarette smoke and car exhausts). However, in quantitative terms, absorption through the oral route is of greater importance (Lundberg et al., 2004). No information is available on dermal absorption of nitrate or nitrite.

8.2   Distribution

Absorbed nitrate is rapidly transported via the blood and selectively recirculated by the salivary glands. In humans, peak nitrate levels in serum, saliva and urine are achieved within 1–3 hours, with less than 1% reaching faeces (Bartholomew and Hill, 1984). In humans and most laboratory animals, except the rat, plasma nitrate is selectively and dose-dependently secreted by the salivary gland via an active transport mechanism shared with iodide and thiocyanate, increasing nitrate concentrations up to 10 times that in plasma; approximately 25% of ingested nitrate is recirculated into saliva and secreted via this mechanism (Spiegelhalder et al., 1976; Walker, 1996; Lundberg et al., 2004). The rise in salivary nitrate concentration is fast. The onset can be seen as early as 10 minutes after ingestion, reaching a maximum concentration between 20 and 180 minutes after ingestion; conversely, the decrease in salivary nitrate concentration is slow and may be terminated only after 24–48 hours (L'hirondel and L'hirondel, 2002).

After intravenous injection of labelled nitrate to a healthy volunteer, labelled nitrate was distributed throughout the body and accumulated linearly with time in the abdomen, supporting entero-salivary recirculation of nitrate/nitrite due to swallowing (Witter et al., 1979). In mice and rabbits, intravenous or intratracheal injection of labelled nitrite resulted in a homogeneous distribution of labelled nitrite to numerous organs, including liver, kidneys and bladder (Parks et al., 1981).

Plasma nitrite levels are normally lower than nitrate levels due to lower exposure and rapid reoxidation of nitrite to nitrate by oxygenated haemoglobin in the blood (Parks et al., 1981; Walker, 1996; Lundberg et al., 2004). In dogs and rats, nitrite is almost absent, except in saliva (Fritsch et al., 1985; Cortas and Wakid, 1991).

In human breast milk, levels of nitrate rise rapidly after parturition, peaking on days 2–5 postpartum and at concentrations higher than those in plasma (L'hirondel and L'hirondel, 2002). However, 1 hour after ingestion of a nitrate-containing meal, nitrate concentrations in human and canine milk rose, but did not exceed plasma levels (Green et al., 1982). There is evidence of placental transfer of nitrite to the foetus. Nitrite was found in foetal blood following maternal sodium nitrite dosing, oral or injected, of rats (2.5–5.0 mg/kg bw/day, equivalent to 1.7-3.3 mg nitrite/kg bw/day; Shuval and Gruener, 1972) and mice (0.5 mg/kg bw/day, equivalent to 0.3 mg nitrite/kg bw/day; Globus and Samuel, 1978). In men with normal semen, nitrate and nitrite concentrations were significantly higher in semen than in plasma, supporting a role for nitric oxide in sperm function (L'hirondel and L'hirondel, 2002).

8.3   Metabolism

Of the approximately 25% of exogenous nitrate actively recirculated by the salivary ducts, about 20% (representing 5–8% of ingested nitrate exposure) of it is reduced by oral bacteria to nitrite (as reviewed in Walker, 1996; Mensinga et al., 2003). This nitrite, formed by the reduction of nitrate, represents approximately 80% of total exposure to nitrite, the remainder coming directly from exogenous sources. Swallowing saliva exposes the stomach to the nitrite formed in the oral cavity. Microbial conversion of nitrate to nitrite is influenced by bacterial infection, nutritional status and age (Eisenbrand et al., 1980; Forman et al., 1985). In a healthy fasting adult stomach, a pH of about 1–3 is virtually sterile; hence, it is considered to be low for microbial growth and consequently low for microbial conversion of nitrate to nitrite (Mensinga et al., 2003). However, human variability in gastric pH (e.g., in hypochlorhydric patients) results in numerous individuals with a pH greater than 5, resulting in microbial growth and subsequently nitrate reduction to nitrite (Ruddell et al., 1976). In addition, antacids or other medication can decrease gastric acidity, consequently increasing the susceptibility to reduction of nitrate to nitrite (L'hirondel and L'hirondel, 2002) (see Section 9.3 for more information on endogenous nitrite formation). Further, the acidic environment of the stomach reduces salivary nitrite to nitrous acid and subsequently to nitrogen oxides, including nitric oxide (Lundberg et al., 2004, 2008).

In addition to nitrate reduction to nitrite, nitrite is reoxidized via a coupled reaction with oxyhaemoglobin, producing methaemoglobin and nitrate; nitrite appears in a dynamic equilibrium with nitrate, with nitrate being the normal state (Walker, 1999; Lundberg et al., 2004). Lastly, nitrate reductase results in the reduction of nitrite to ammonia (Lundberg et al., 2004, 2008).

8.3.1 Endogenous nitrate formation

There is an endogenous synthesis of nitrate, which amounts in normal healthy humans to an average of 1 mmol/day, corresponding to 62 mg of nitrate per day or 14 mg of nitrate-nitrogen per day (Mensinga et al., 2003; WHO, 2007). In mammals, the primary pathway of endogenous nitrate formation is the L-arginine-nitric oxide synthase (NOS) pathway, which is constitutively active in numerous cell types throughout the body. The amino acid L-arginine is converted by nitric oxide synthetase to nitric oxide and citrulline, followed by oxidation of the nitric oxide to nitrous anhydride and then reaction of nitrous anhydride with water to yield nitrite. Nitrite is rapidly oxidized to nitrate through reaction with hemoglobin (Addiscott and Benjamin, 2004; WHO, 2007; EFSA, 2008; IARC, 2010). Thus, when nitrate intake is low and there are no additional exogenous sources, such as during gastrointestinal infections, endogenous production is more important than exogenous sources (Mensinga et al., 2003).

8.4   Excretion

Nitrate is found in all body fluids, whereas nitrite concentrations in the body are low, as nitrite is readily oxidized to nitrate. After oral exposure, nitrate is found at highest concentrations in urine, but also in milk, gastric fluid, endotracheal secretion, saliva and sweat (L'hirondel and L'hirondel, 2002). In humans, independent of dose, approximately 65–70% of orally administered nitrate is rapidly excreted in urine and less than 1% is excreted in faeces; the remainder is excreted in sweat or is degraded in saliva or digestive secretions by bacteria. Excretion is maximal about 5 hours post-exposure and is essentially complete after 24 hours (Bartholomew and Hill, 1984). In infants under normal conditions, approximately 100% of nitrate is excreted in urine (Turek et al., 1980). Excretion follows first-order kinetics, and the elimination half-life is approximately 5 hours (Green et al., 1982).

Nitrate (approximately 25%) is actively transported by the sodium/iodide symporter (NIS) to saliva and breast milk; about 3% of nitrate also appears in urine as urea and ammonia in humans (Wagner et al., 1983; Walker, 1999). Mean nitrate clearance is estimated to be 25.8 mL/min (Cortas and Wakid, 1991).

The average plasma half-life of nitrite is 30 minutes in humans and less than an hour in most species; consequently, nitrite is not normally detected in body tissues and fluids after oral administration (Kortboyer et al., 1997). Elimination of nitrite from the stomach occurs through two competing pathways: absorption and reaction with amines, causing formation of nitrosamines (see Section 9.3 for details).

8.5   Physiologically-based pharmacokinetic models

Because nitrite is formed endogenously from nitrate in humans and is more potent than nitrate in terms of methaemoglobinemia, the amount of nitrite formed from ingested nitrate is important for the risk assessment of human exposure to nitrate. A model of the toxicokinetics of nitrate and nitrite was built to incorporate the uptake of nitrate from food and water, endogenous synthesis of nitrate, secretion of nitrate from blood into saliva, conversion of nitrate to nitrite by bacteria present in saliva and reconversion of nitrite to nitrate in blood (Zeilmaker et al., 1996). The model was validated with toxicokinetic data from volunteers (Wagner et al., 1983). The model estimates that: 1) the average adult synthesizes 120 mg of nitrate per day; 2) 32–60% of the oral dose of nitrate is secreted from blood into saliva; 3) 13–22% of salivary nitrate is converted into nitrite; and 4) 7–9% of nitrate is converted to nitrite in humans. The model further estimates that the average adult forms 0.27–0.36 mg of nitrite per kilogram body weight per day after single and repeated (once every 24 hours) doses of nitrate and that 31–41% originates from endogenously synthesized nitrate.

9.0   Health effects
9.1   Effects in humans
9.1.1   Acute toxicity

A broad range of oral lethal nitrate and nitrite doses to humans have been reported, likely due to the wide variability in individual sensitivity. For nitrate, human oral lethal doses range from 4 to 50 g (Mirvish, 1991) and from 67 to 833 mg/kg bw (Boink et al., 1999). For nitrite, the estimated oral lethal dose for humans ranges from 1.6 to 9.5 g (Gowans, 1990; Mirvish, 1991) and from 33 to 250 mg/kg bw, the lower doses applying to children, the elderly and people with a

deficiency in reduced nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide (NADH)–cytochrome b5–methaemoglobin reductase (Boink et al., 1999).

Methaemoglobinaemia is the most widely reported adverse effect associated with human exposure to nitrate or nitrite. Groups especially susceptible to methaemoglobin formation include the foetus, infants less than 6 months of age and individuals genetically deficient in NADH–cytochrome b5–methaemoglobin reductase (see Section 9.4 for mode of action).

Reviews of the literature in the United States from 1941 to 1995 (Walton, 1951; Fan et al., 1987; Fan and Steinberg, 1996) revealed cases of methaemoglobinaemia resulting from consumption of drinking water containing nitrate-nitrogen concentrations above 10 ppm (equivalent to 45 mg/L as nitrate). In spite of limitations in clinical diagnosis and determination of exact nitrate concentrations in the drinking water, nitrate concentrations above 45 mg/L were implicated in cases of methaemoglobinaemia, mostly in infants. Notably, cases of methaemoglobinaemia were observed in infants less than 6 months of age fed formula reconstituted with drinking water containing high levels of nitrate. Of the 214 clinical cases for which data were available, none occurred at nitrate levels less than 45 mg/L, and only 2% of cases occurred at nitrate levels ranging from 49 to 88 mg/L in drinking water. In fact, the majority (80%) of cases were exposed to nitrate at concentrations greater than 220 mg/L. Although infants who are breastfed may be exposed to nitrite/nitrate in breast milk, clinical methaemoglobinaemia usually occurs when infant formula and other infant foods are prepared with water contaminated with nitrate or nitrite. Young children do not appear to be as sensitive as infants. In the United States, 64 children aged 1–8 years who consumed well water containing nitrate at concentrations of 22–111 mg/L as nitrate-nitrogen (97-491 mg/L nitrate) did not have elevated methaemoglobin concentrations, compared with 38 children consuming well water containing less than 10 mg/L as nitrate-nitrogen (44.3 mg/L nitrate; Craun et al., 1981).

Since the Fan and Steinberg (1996) review, additional reports have supported the role of elevated levels of nitrate in cases of methaemoglobinaemia. An epidemiological study investigated the prevalence of methaemoglobinaemia in five areas in India with average nitrate concentrations of 26, 45, 95, 222 and 495 mg/L in drinking water (Gupta et al., 1999). In total, 178 people (approximately 30 per dose and representing about 10% of the total population from each of the five areas) were matched for age and weight. After examination of histories and percent methaemoglobin in blood samples, it was found that high nitrate concentration correlated with (significance level not provided) methaemoglobinaemia in all groups, especially in individuals less than 1 year and greater than 18 years of age; the highest levels of methaemoglobin were measured in infants less than 1 year of age. High levels of methaemoglobin were observed in all age groups and at all nitrate concentrations in drinking water. Maximum methaemoglobin levels (7–27%) were observed at nitrate levels of 45–95 mg/L in all age groups. Maximum adaptation of NADH–cytochrome b5–methaemoglobin reductase activity occurred at a nitrate concentration of 95 mg/L in drinking water and decreased to baseline at a nitrate concentration of 200 mg/L. In children up to 8 years of age, the main symptom was cyanosis, but recurrent respiratory infections (40–82% of children), stomatitis (17–24% of children) and diarrhoea (33–55% of children) were also reported (Gupta et al., 1999).

A retrospective nested case–control study of 71 Romanian children found an association between nitrate exposure from drinking water and clinical methaemoglobinaemia (Zeman et al., 2002). Mean nitrate levels were 103.6 and 11.2 mg/kg bw/day for cases and controls, respectively. Methaemoglobinaemia was most strongly associated with nitrate exposure through

the dietary route via infant formula reconstituted with water containing nitrate at concentrations of 253 mg/L compared with 28 mg/L ($P = 0.0318$). It was found that breast feeding protects infants younger than 6 months of age ($P = 0.0244$). Diarrhoeal disease was also associated with the development of methaemoglobinaemia, with a likelihood ratio of 4.323 ($P = 0.0376$). This association is not as highly significant as the association between methaemoglobinaemia and nitrate exposure (likelihood ratio 29.7, $P = 0.0001$). Although more cases than controls experienced recurring diarrhoea, cases overwhelmingly indicated that diarrhoea episodes were not associated with cyanosis (Zeman et al., 2002). However, exposure levels were measured years after clinical incidence, and no measures of methaemoglobin levels, a true measure of methaemoglobinaemia, were reported.

Some cases of illnesses due to accidental ingestion of nitrate/nitrite were also reported. The U.S. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC, 1997) reported two events. In the first event, methaemoglobinaemia was diagnosed in 29 of 49 students who consumed leftover soup containing nitrite at 459 mg/L; in 14 students, the methaemoglobin levels were above 20% (range 3–47%). Manifestations included cyanosis, nausea, abdominal pain, vomiting and dizziness. In the second event, four out of six office workers showed elevated methaemoglobin levels (6–16%) after drinking leftover coffee containing nitrite at 300 mg/L; no estimates of nitrite intake were made. In both events, the nitrite originated from contaminated tap water. Other case reports include life-threatening methaemoglobinaemia associated with consumption of sodium nitrite crystals in tea at concentrations of 5100 mg/L, 5000 mg/L and 4900 mg/L (equivalent to 3401.7, 3335 or 3268.3 mg nitrite/L) in twin 4-year-old boys and their 2-year-old sister (Finan et al., 1998); intense cyanosis, fainting, abdominal pain and diarrhoea with levels of methaemoglobin above 10% after a 23-year-old woman ingested an unknown amount of ammonium nitrate from an ice pack (Brunato et al., 2003); and illness after two infants consumed formula reconstituted with well water containing nitrate-nitrogen at 22.9 mg/L (~101.4 mg/L nitrate; no bacterial contamination found) or 27.4 mg/L (121.4 mg/L nitrate; *Escherichia coli* contamination detected), resulting in less than 2% and 91% methaemoglobin concentrations in the two infants (Knobeloch et al., 2000). Kortboyer et al. (1998) reported that a single intravenous dose of 0.12 mmol sodium nitrite per millimole haemoglobin induced 10.8% methaemoglobin in the blood of three healthy volunteers; this dose was considered the maximum safe dose. Healthy volunteers were then given 0.04, 0.08 or 0.12 mmol sodium nitrite, and effects of mild intensity were reported, including lower blood pressure accompanied by a compensatory increase in heart rate at all doses (Kortboyer et al., 1998). Conversely, Shuval and Gruener (1972) found no differences between mean methaemoglobin levels in 1702 (1- to 90-day-old) infants with nitrate at 50–90 mg/L in their water supply compared with 758 infants with nitrate at 5 mg/L in their water supply.

Limitations in the above studies make it difficult to interpret the association between nitrate/nitrite intake and methaemoglobinaemia. Specifically, exposure data are often obtained weeks or months after acute illness, and water consumed by affected infants in most studies had microbial contamination, which may increase endogenous nitrite formation and methaemoglobin levels. The Fan and Steinberg (1996) review also reported the possibility that methaemoglobinaemia may be associated with both the presence of nitrate and bacterial contamination of drinking water, favouring the conversion of nitrate to nitrite and the occurrence of diarrhoea, which, in infants, could increase the risk of developing methaemoglobinaemia.

Enteric infections, potentially caused by faecal bacterial contamination in wells, may lead

to the endogenous production of nitrite, as evidenced by numerous published reports of infants with diarrhoea and methaemoglobinaemia but no apparent exposure to exogenous methaemoglobin-forming agents. In a study of infants (1 week to 1.5 years old) consuming low levels of nitrate plus nitrite (30–110 µmol), the blood nitrate level was higher in 58 infants with acute diarrhoea than in 60 controls without gastrointestinal disturbances: 71–604 µmol/L versus 37.1 ± 19.4 µmol/L, respectively (Hegesh and Shiloah, 1982). Generally, the higher nitrate concentrations correlated with diarrhoea severity and higher percentage of total haemoglobin as methaemoglobin (0.4 to > 8% in cases compared with 0.6% in controls). Furthermore, in the infants with diarrhoea, the daily excretion of nitrate was several times higher than the daily intake of nitrate. The authors suggested that diarrhoea results in endogenous *de novo* synthesis of nitrite, and this is the principal cause of infantile methaemoglobinaemia (Hegesh and Shiloah, 1982). Additional support comes from Terblanche (1991), who reported cases of methaemoglobinaemia in infants due to feeding with various brands of regular powdered milk containing spores of *Bacillus subtilis*, a nitrate-reducing bacterium. Acidified milk powders, often prepared by fermentation, did not cause methaemoglobinaemia (Terblanche, 1991). More support comes from a prospective evaluation of 45 patients (< 3 months of age) admitted to hospital for gastroenteritis and methaemoglobinaemia; although only 22% of infants had a positive stool culture, the authors reported suggestive evidence of bacterial aetiology of methaemoglobinaemia (Hanukoglu and Danon, 1996).

A review of research and historical cases has integrated multiple pieces of evidence to support endogenous nitrite formation due to bacterial-contaminated water as the cause of many cases of methaemoglobinaemia (Avery, 1999):

1. because diarrhoea was a prominent symptom in the majority of drinking water–linked methaemoglobinaemia cases, the evidence suggests that diarrhoea, gastrointestinal infection and inflammation are the principal causative factors in infantile methaemoglobinaemia (not only the ingested nitrates). Diarrhoea and vomiting are not symptoms that typically accompany cyanosis, methaemoglobinaemia due to oxidant drug exposure or genetic abnormalities in haemoglobin;

2. in studies reporting infants suffering from diarrhoea and methaemoglobinaemia without excess exogenous exposure to nitrite, nitrate excretion is 10 times higher than the amount ingested;

3. protein intolerance accompanied by diarrhoea or vomiting has also been reported to cause methaemoglobinaemia in infants less than 6 months of age without excessive intake of nitrate through food and water;

4. over 90% of nitrate exposure comes from food, and the only methaemoglobinaemia cases linked to food have involved very high levels of nitrate contamination. For example, seven infants were diagnosed with methaemoglobinaemia linked to consumption of silver beets (mean nitrate concentration 3200 mg/kg); infants had 10–58% methaemoglobin levels and consumed water containing a nitrate concentration of 3–6 mg/L (Sanchez-Echaniz et al., 2001); and

5. cases of methaemoglobinaemia resulting from bacterial infections (e.g., urinary tract infections) have been reported in the absence of nitrate consumption.

Avery (1999) proposed that the correlation between nitrate in drinking water and methaemoglobinaemia incidence may be explained by: (1) nitrate contamination being an indicator of bacterial contamination; or (2) exogenous nitrate exacerbating the formation of nitrite

(under conditions of gastrointestinal inflammation or infection) while inhibiting the conversion of nitrite to ammonia (non-harmful). The enzyme that converts nitrite to ammonia is inhibited by elevated nitrate concentrations. The author further stated that this may explain the wide variability in susceptibility to methaemoglobinaemia and suggested that the current allowable nitrate/nitrite limits in drinking water that are based solely on infantile methaemoglobinaemia may be unnecessarily strict.

In support of Avery's (1999) proposal, Charmandari et al. (2001) reported that plasma nitrate concentrations, and hence endogenous nitric oxide production, could discriminate between acute and chronic diarrhoea in children 4 months to 2 years of age. Patients with infectious diarrhoea had significantly higher endogenous nitric oxide production and significantly ($P < 0.5$) higher plasma nitrate levels (405 ± 281 µmol/L in 14 cases) compared with chronic diarrhoea cases (134.7 ± 77 µmol/L in 13 cases) or controls (54.1 ± 20 µmol/L in 14 controls).

In a literature review conducted for the World Health Organization (WHO), no exposure–response relationships between levels of nitrate in drinking water and methaemoglobinaemia were found (Fewtrell, 2004).

Acquired methaemoglobinaemia can result from exposure to some chemicals (e.g., sulphate, chlorite, chloramines, chlorate) and pharmaceuticals (e.g., lidocaine, benzocaine, sulphonamides, dapsone, nitroglycerine) (Bruning-Fann and Kaneene, 1993; Sanchez-Echaniz et al., 2001).

9.1.2 Subchronic toxicity

9.1.2.1 Thyroid effects

Several studies suggest that nitrate exposure alters human thyroid gland function by competitively inhibiting thyroidal iodide uptake, leading to decreased thyroid hormone secretion (triiodothyronine [T_3], thyroxine [T_4]) and increased levels of thyroid stimulating hormone (TSH). Hyperstimulation by TSH, in turn, can result in thyroid gland enlargement or goitre (see Section 9.4.1 for mode of action). Thyroid hormones are essential for normal biological function and critical for neurological development, skeletal growth, metabolism and the cardiovascular system. Urinary iodide measurements are used globally to indicate and monitor iodide sufficiency in populations. If no initial iodine deficiencies are reported, there is an increased possibility that the observed effects on thyroid gland function are due to nitrate exposure. However, the lack of iodine deficiency does not exclude the possibility that the observed effects are due to the presence of other chemicals in the drinking water that inhibit iodine uptake.

In the Netherlands, a cross-sectional study (Van Maanen et al., 1994) examined two groups of women exposed to low (estimated at 0.02 mg/L, $n = 24$) and medium (17.5 mg/L, $n = 27$) nitrate concentrations in tap water and two groups exposed to medium (< 50 mg/L, $n = 19$) and high (> 50 mg/L, $n = 12$) concentrations of nitrate in well water. Urinary and salivary nitrate concentrations were related, in a dose-dependent manner, to the consumption of water containing nitrate. No iodide deficiencies were observed in any nitrate-exposed groups. A dose-dependent increase in thyroid volume measured by ultrasound was observed among the group exposed to high levels of nitrate relative to the two medium and low exposed groups. Although the authors omitted many outliers, they found that hypertrophy of the thyroid was associated, paradoxically, with significantly lower TSH levels and significantly higher T_4 levels in the high exposed group compared to the medium exposed groups. For the entire population, linear regression analysis showed significant correlations between thyroid volume and nitrate concentrations in drinking

water, as well as between thyroid volume and thyroglobulin levels. Thus, an effect on thyroid was observed in drinking water at nitrate concentrations exceeding 50 mg/L.

The effects of nitrate in drinking water on thyroid function were also studied in children in Slovakia (Tajtakova et al., 2006; Radikova et al., 2008). Thyroid function was compared between 324 children (aged 10–13 years) from a community with nitrate concentrations of 51–274 mg/L in their drinking water and 168 children of the same age living in communities with nitrate concentrations below 2 mg/L in their drinking water. Urinary iodide levels were similar and within normal range (approximately 100–150 µg/L in both areas). The nitrate-exposed children presented with larger thyroid glands and an increased frequency of signs of thyroid disorder (13.7% vs. 4.7% hypoechogenicity, $P < 0.01$; 4% vs. 0% increased TSH levels; 2.5% vs. 0% positive thyroperoxidase antibodies). The increased TSH levels were in the range of subclinical hypothyroidism (> 4.0 mIU/L). However, there were no differences in concentrations of total T_4 or free T_3 between the two groups. The increase in thyroid gland size and slight increase in the number of children with TSH concentrations above the clinical range suggest that in the nitrate-exposed children, the hypothalamic–pituitary–thyroid (HPT) axis is hyperstimulated, supporting an antithyroid mode of action. However, the authors did not control for effects of other potential endocrine disruptors.

In Bulgaria between 1990 and 1994, a 40.9% increase in the incidence of goitre was found in 181 children (6–14 years) exposed to nitrate concentrations of 78–112 mg/L in drinking water compared with 178 children of the same age exposed to nitrate at 28–48 mg/L (Gatseva and Dimitrov, 1997; Gatseva et al., 1998). In later studies, 156 children (7–14 years) from villages where, in 2006, an average nitrate concentration of 75 mg/L was found in their drinking water were compared with 163 children from villages found to have a nitrate concentration of 8 mg/L in their drinking water. The population was iodine sufficient overall. The children from the higher-nitrate villages had a significant increased prevalence of goitre relative to children from reference villages (odds ratio [OR] = 3.0; 95% confidence interval [CI] = 1.3–7.0; $P = 0.01$) (Gatseva and Argirova, 2008a). However, the study did not account for the possibility of iodine deficiency in the minority of participants with the largest goiters and the lowest urine iodine concentrations. In addition, thyroid function was not evaluated, there was no biomarker of nitrate exposure and other endocrine disruptors were not evaluated.

In contrast, for younger children (3–6 years) exposed to a nitrate concentration of 93 mg/L ($n = 50$), there was no significant alteration in prevalence of thyroid dysfunction or goitre compared with that found in children of similar age consuming drinking water containing a nitrate concentration of 8 mg/L ($n = 49$) (OR = 2.3; 95% CI = 0.85–6.4; $P = 0.14$) (Gatseva and Argirova, 2008b). In these children, urinary iodine concentrations were lower in nitrate-exposed than in non-exposed children. The same study found a significant increase in the relative risk of thyroid disorders for pregnant women (17–37 years) living in the village with a nitrate concentration of 93 mg/L in the drinking water ($n = 26$) compared with women ($n = 22$) living in areas with a nitrate concentration of 8 mg/L in the drinking water (OR = 5.29; 95% CI = 1.003–27.94; $P = 0.0454$). Significant differences were also found between goitre rate in exposed and non-exposed pregnant women. However, mean and median urinary iodide concentrations were significantly decreased in nitrate-exposed versus non-exposed pregnant women ($P < 0.0001$). In addition, a small (exact number not reported) percentage of the study population was iodide deficient. Strong conclusions from this study could not be drawn because of these iodide

deficiencies as well as the lack of measurements of thyroid hormone levels, biomarker of nitrate exposure and other endocrine disruptors.

Overall, these studies suggest that exposure to high levels of nitrate in drinking water (> 50 mg/L) may be associated with increased thyroid volume. The effects of nitrate on thyroid function were inconsistent across studies. High nitrate exposure was associated with lower serum TSH in adult women in the study by van Maanen et al. (1994), but was associated with higher rates of subclinical hypothyroidism (TSH elevation) in children in the Slovakian study (Tajtakova et al., 2006; Radikova et al., 2008).

In Germany, Hampel et al. (2003) examined the correlation between urinary nitrate levels and the prevalence of goitre or nodules (corrected for urinary iodide levels) in 3059 clinically healthy adults (18–70 years; both sexes). Urinary nitrate level (55.2 mg nitrate per gram creatinine, average of 61.5 mg nitrate per gram creatinine for men and 51.5 mg nitrate per gram creatinine for women; $P < 0.03$) was not correlated with thyroid size or nodules. However, the authors reported a weak correlation between nitrate level in urine and thyroid size ($r = 0.18$, $P < 0.05$) in 71 adults with decreased iodide in urine (< 50 µg/g creatinine). Further, there was a weak correlation between urinary nitrate concentrations above 60 mg nitrate per gram creatinine in 1166 adults and thyroid size ($r = 0.18$; $P < 0.01$). Subsequently, Below et al. (2008) conducted a cross-sectional survey of 3772 adults (20–79 years old; men and women) in a previously iodine-deficient area. The analysed nitrate content in the publicly supplied drinking water was 2.5–10 mg/L. Since 80-90% of nitrate intake is renally eliminated, the study measured mean urinary nitrate concentrations as an estimate of nitrate exposure. For the entire population the mean urinary nitrate concentration was 53 mg/L and the 75th percentile was 69 mg/L, indicating a significant dietary nitrate exposure. No association with increased thyroid volume ($P = 0.47$) or risk of goitre ($P = 0.69$) was found when comparing the individuals with high urine nitrate (115 ± 2.2 mg/L) with individuals with lower nitrate in their urine (32 ± 0.2 mg/L). Although the authors stated that the study population had sufficient iodide intake, no measures were reported; in addition, no measurements of thyroid hormone concentrations were made.

Most recently, in the United States, Ward et al. (2010) found a 24% higher prevalence of hypothyroidism among women in the highest dietary nitrate intake quartile (> 41.1 mg/L per day as NO_3-N; >182 mg/L as NO_3^-) compared with those in the lowest dietary intake quartile (< 17.4 mg/L per day as NO_3-N or < 77 mg/L as NO_3^-; OR = 1.2; 95% CI = 1.1–1.4), but reported no association between the prevalence of hypothyroidism and nitrate concentration in drinking water. The large study population of 21 977 older women was limited in that it relied on self-report measures, lacked individual exposure assessment, did not control for iodide intake levels and did not measure thyroid hormone levels.

In addition, subchronic exposure to sodium nitrate at 15 mg/kg bw (equivalent to 10.9 mg NO_3^-/kg bw) daily in 200 mL of drinking water did not cause changes in thyroid gland function in a healthy population (Hunault et al., 2007). In this study, conducted in the Netherlands, 10 adults randomly received sodium nitrate at 15 mg/kg bw (equivalent to 10.9 mg NO_3^-/kg bw), whereas 10 adults received 200 mL distilled water once a day for 28 days. Both groups followed an iodide-restricted and low-nitrate diet prior to and during the study period; compliance was measured by urinary iodide and plasma nitrate levels. The plasma nitrate concentrations differed by 2.7 mg/kg between the treated and control groups on day 28. At day 29, no significant effects on thyroidal iodine uptake and thyroid hormone (T_3, T_4 and TSH) plasma concentrations were observed. The study demonstrated no significant effects on thyroidal iodine uptake and thyroid hormone plasma

concentrations in humans following subchronic exposure to sodium nitrate at 15 mg/kg bw/day (equivalent to 10.9 mg NO_3^-/kg bw/day). Also, no elevation of the percentage of methaemoglobin was observed after the 4-week exposure to nitrate. Except for the low number of subjects, the study had no major limitations.

Blount et al. (2009) measured three sodium/iodide symporter (NIS) inhibitors (perchlorate, thiocyanate and nitrate) and iodide in maternal and foetal fluids collected during caesarean section on 150 American women. With mean urinary nitrate levels of 47 900 µg/L and urinary iodide levels of 1420 µg/L (indicating excess levels of maternal iodide), the study found sufficient iodide levels in the foetus and no association between cord levels of three NIS inhibitors and newborn weight, length or head circumference, which are potential downstream effects of altered thyroid function (see mode of action in Section 9.4.1 for details).

Other factors may confound thyroid hormone function, including iodine insufficiency, age and pregnancy. Iodine insufficiency of the population due to lack of iodine in the diet or from other dietary exposures (e.g., thiocyanates in tobacco or brassica vegetables) (Vanderpas, 2006) or pollutant goitrogens (e.g., perchlorate) (Blount et al., 2006) may increase susceptibility to effects of increased nitrate. In addition, the effects on thyroid hormone synthesis can be more profound during pregnancy and for newborns (see mode of action in Section 9.4.1 for details).

9.1.2.2 Insulin-dependent type 1 diabetes mellitus

Together, the data suggest some association between intake of nitrogen-containing compounds and risk of insulin-dependent type 1 diabetes mellitus (IDDM). However, the data are limited and inconsistent; more accurate estimation of the total intake of nitrate, nitrite or nitrosamines at an individual level may be necessary for a conclusive assessment of their relationship with IDDM.

Positive associations between nitrate levels in drinking water and the incidence of IDDM in children (0–18 years) were reported in two ecological studies: in Colorado, U.S. (Kostraba et al., 1992), children exposed to nitrate concentrations of 0.77–8.2 mg/L vs. 0.0–0.084 mg/L were at increased risk of IDDM (correlation = 0.29; *P* = 0.02; 1280 cases, 1979–1988); in Yorkshire, England (Parslow et al., 1997; McKinney et al., 1999), the rate of IDDM was 15% higher among water supply zones with average nitrate levels of 14.9–41.0 mg/L vs. < 3.2 mg/L (relative risk [RR] = 1.3; *P* < 0.05; 1797 cases, 1978–1994); however, exposure measurements were obtained from 1990 to 1995. Conversely, no significant risks were identified for childhood diabetes from exposure to nitrate in drinking water in 594 water supply zones in Scotland and Central England (Paediatric Epidemiology Group, 1999). The study included 886 English and 1376 Scottish children (<15 years old) diagnosed with IDDM between 1990 and 1986 and estimates of population exposure were mean monthly nitrate levels of 22.94 and 2.07 mg/L, respectively, for the same time period.

Associations between dietary intake of nitrate, nitrite or nitrosamines and the incidence of IDDM in children (0–14 years) were positive for exposure to high nitrogen-containing foods from Sweden (OR = 2.4; *P* < 0.05; 339 cases and 528 controls; Dahlquist et al., 1990) and for medium- and high-nitrate food exposure groups from Finland (OR = 1.5 and 2.3, respectively; *P* < 0.05; 471 cases and 452 controls; Virtanen et al., 1994). However, nitrate exposure was poorly reported.

No associations were reported between the incidence of IDDM in children (0–18 years) and exposure in drinking water to 7 mg/L nitrate or 0.01 mg/L nitrite in Finland (471 cases and 452 controls between 1986 and 1989; Virtanen et al., 1994), 0.25–2.1, 2.1–6.4 or 6.4–41 mg/L

nitrate in the Netherlands (1104 cases between 1991 and 1995; Van Maanen et al., 2000), less than 18 mg/L nitrate in Italy (1142 cases between 1989 and 1998; Casu et al., 2000), 0.49–31.9 mg/L nitrate in England (570 cases between 1975 and 1996; Zhao et al., 2001) or 6.6 mg/L nitrate in Finland (3564 cases between 1987 and 1996; Moltchanova et al., 2004).

9.1.2.3 Balkan endemic nephropathy (BEN)

Two cross-sectional studies did not find any association of nitrate or nitrite in drinking water with BEN, a form of interstitial nephritis. In Niagolova et al. (2005), 65 water samples from 27 Bulgarian villages classified as "ever had a recorded case of BEN" versus "never" had nitrate plus nitrite concentrations of 1.6–47.4 mg/L versus 1.2–22 mg/L for spring-fed water samples and 7.7–103 mg/L versus 14.9–75.7 mg/L for well water samples, respectively; no significant differences in mean concentrations were observed between BEN and non-BEN samples from each source. In Yugoslavia (Radovanovic and Stevanovic, 1988), levels of nitrate and nitrite did not significantly differ between 10 study wells used by people with the highest proportion of β_2-microglobulin (earliest and most specific indication of BEN) in the urine compared with 10 control wells used by people without hyper-β_2-microglobulin-urea. Of the 112 people examined, 60 used the study wells and 52 used the control wells. At study wells, the mean nitrate levels were 8.97 (0.42–23.73) mg/L as nitrate-nitrogen, and mean nitrite levels were 0.81 (0.00–2.38) mg/L as nitrite-nitrogen. At the control wells, the mean nitrate levels were 9.85 (2.80–22.40) mg/L as nitrate-nitrogen, and mean nitrite levels were 0.70 (0.00–1.82) mg/L as nitrite-nitrogen. Both studies concluded that nitrogen compounds alone are not likely to directly cause BEN.

9.1.3 Long-term exposure and carcinogenicity

The major concern associated with long-term exposure to nitrate and nitrite is the formation of *N*-nitroso compounds (NOCs), many of which are carcinogenic. Numerous epidemiological studies have been undertaken on the relationship between ingested nitrate and nitrite and human cancer

The number of well-designed epidemiological studies with individual exposure data and information on nitrosation inhibitors and precursors are few for any single cancer site, limiting the ability to draw conclusions about cancer risk. Moreover, studied populations had exposures mostly below 45 mg NO_3^-/L and the small numbers of cases with high water nitrate exposure limited the ability to evaluate risk among subgroups likely to have endogenous nitrosation. Most of the studies lacked information on cancer risk factors (e.g., *Helicobacter pylori* in gastric cancer), which are important effect modifiers for carcinogenic NOC exposure.

High intake of certain vegetables (or fruits), although an important source of nitrate, seems to be associated with a lower risk of most of the cancers. Protective factors such as dietary antioxidants (e.g., vitamin C), which are simultaneously present in these foods, may play an important role (Gangolli et al., 1994). For this reason, dietary nitrate may result in less endogenous formation of the carcinogenic NOCs compared with nitrate in drinking water.

Considering the limitations of the studies (design flaws such as limited data on nitrate concentrations, inability to account for potential confounders and use of cancer mortality rates rather than incidence rates), the focus of this evaluation is on studies with individual exposure data (historical monitoring data, individual estimates of exposure and information on potential confounders).

9.1.3.1 Gastrointestinal tract tumours
     Several case–control and cohort studies evaluated the relationship between nitrate or nitrite intake (drinking water and dietary) and risk of cancer of the gastrointestinal tract. Overall, the results from these studies were ambiguous; no clear association could be drawn from these studies.

Nitrate
     Epidemiological studies that assessed the relationship between nitrate in drinking water and cancer have primarily focused on stomach cancer. Results from these studies were mixed, with some studies showing positive associations (Morales-Suarez-Varela et al., 1995; Sandor et al., 2001), others showing no association (Joossens et al., 1996; Barrett et al., 1998; Van Leeuwen et al., 1999) and a few showing inverse associations (Beresford, 1985; Barrett et al., 1998). Some studies conducted in Slovakia, Spain and Hungary found positive correlations between stomach cancer incidence or mortality and historical measurements of drinking water nitrate concentrations near or above 10 mg NO_3-N/L - equivalent to 44 mg NO_3^-/L (Morales-Suarez-Varela et al., 1995; Sandor et al., 2001; Gulis et al., 2002).
     In a matched case–control study, Yang et al. (1998) investigated the association between gastric cancer mortality and nitrate levels in municipal supplies in Taiwan. The odds ratios adjusted (OR_{adj}) for possible confounders were significantly higher in the two highest tertiles of nitrate exposure [highest tertile $\geq$ 0.45 mg NO_3-N/L (equivalent to 2 mg NO_3^-/L), OR_{adj} = 1.10, 95% CI = 1.00–1.20; medium tertile 0.23–0.44 mg NO_3-N/L (equivalent to 1–1.9 mg NO_3^-/L), OR_{adj} = 1.14, 95% CI = 0.04–1.25]. Overall, the study showed a significant positive association between drinking water nitrate exposure and gastric cancer mortality. In contrast, Rademacher et al. (1992) found no association between gastric cancer mortality and higher nitrate levels [range: > 0.5 to > 10 mg NO_3-N/L (equivalent to > 2.2 to > 44 mg NO_3^-/L)] from U.S. public municipal and private water sources.
     In the Netherlands, Van Loon et al. (1998) also did not find an association between nitrate intake from drinking water and gastric cancer in a cohort of men and women, after 6.3-years of follow-up. This study also found no significant association between dietary nitrate and the incidence of gastric cancer. A further analysis of the effect modification of vitamin C intake did not reveal a positive association.
     In a recent population-based case–control study in Nebraska, U.S., Ward et al. (2008) did not observe an association between intake of nitrate from public water supplies and stomach or oesophagus cancer.
     Yang et al. (2007) did not find an association between colon cancer mortality and exposure to nitrate through drinking water, even after adjusting for confounding factors. However in another series of studies by the same author, the risk for development of rectal cancer was statistically significantly increased only for individuals with the highest nitrate exposure [$\geq$ 0.45 mg NO_3-N/L (equivalent to 2 mg NO_3^-/L)]. In contrast, Weyer et al. (2001) found an inverse association between drinking water nitrate exposure and rectal cancer that was mainly restricted to the highest quartile [> 2.46 mg NO_3-N/L (equivalent to 11 mg NO_3^-/L)] of exposure in a large U.S. prospective cohort study in women. The authors also reported no evidence of a clear and consistent association with colon cancer; this pattern did not change after multivariate adjustment.
     In a case–control study, De Roos et al. (2003) also showed no overall association between colon or rectal cancers and levels of public drinking water nitrate in Iowa (USA) towns [average nitrate levels ranged up to > 5 mg NO_3-N/L (equivalent to 22 mg NO_3^-/L)]. However, exposure to

nitrate concentrations above 5 mg NO_3-N/L for more than 10 years was associated with increased colon cancer risk among subgroups with low vitamin C intake (OR = 2.0, 95% CI = 1.2–3.3) and high meat intake (OR = 2.2, 95% CI = 1.4–3.6). These patterns were not observed for rectal cancer.

An overall colorectal cancer risk was not observed, even after adjustment for confounding factors, in a population-based case–control study in women in the U.S. (McElroy et al., 2008). However, when stratified by area in the colon (proximal and transverse colon, distal colon and rectal), an increased risk was observed for proximal colon cancer for women in the highest category [$\geq$ 10.0 mg NO_3-N/L (equivalent to 44 mg NO_3^-/L), OR_{adj} = 2.91; 95% CI = 1.52–5.56] compared with women in the lowest exposure category [< 0.5 mg NO_3-N/L (equivalent to < 2 mg NO_3^-/L)], in the age-adjusted model. These ORs did not change after adjustment for known and suspected colorectal cancer risk factors.

Nitrites

Evidence from case-control studies supported an association between nitrite and nitrosamine intake and gastric cancer risk, but was insufficient regarding oesophageal cancer risk (Jakszyn et al. 2006b). Van Loon et al. (1998) found that the association between dietary nitrite intake and gastric cancer risk was not clear after 6.3 years of follow-up and was still ambiguous even after adjustment for confounding factors. Neither the relative risks nor the trend (p-trend = 0.24) were significant. However, it is important to note that the follow-up time in this study (6.3 years) is relatively short compared to the latency period of gastric cancer,which may be decades, and that dietary nitrite intake had likely greatly decreased many years before study (Van Loon et al., 1998). Knekt et al. (1999) reported no association between nitrite intake and the incidence of stomach or colorectal tumours in a cohort study with a 24-year follow-up. However, these last two studies failed to evaluate effect modification between nitrite and dietary antioxidants.

In case-control studies in Italy, Palli et al. (2001) found that the highest risk of gastric cancer was among those with a higher nitrite and a lower antioxidant intake, subgroups of the population that would be expected to have higher rates of endogenous nitrosation.

A positive association between oesophagal and/or stomach cancer with nitrite intake in the diet as well as a significant interaction with vitamin C were seen in two case-control studies (Mayne et al., 2001; Rogers et al., 1995).

De Roos et al. (2003) found that dietary nitrite intake was positively associated with colon and rectum cancers, with 50% to 70% increased risk at levels in the highest quartile; this increased risk was associated primarily with nitrite intake from animal sources rather than vegetables.

9.1.3.2 Non-Hodgkin's lymphoma (NHL)

Overall, most of studies showed reduced or no association between NHL and drinking water nitrate levels. Nitrite failed to show an association between dietary nitrite and NHL.

Nitrates

In a study conducted in Slovakia, the incidence of NHL and colorectal cancer was significantly elevated among men and women exposed to public water supplies with nitrate levels of 4.5–11.3 mg NO_3-N/L (equivalent to 20-50 mg NO_3^-/L) (Gulis et al., 2002); the same study reported no association with bladder and kidney cancer incidence. In contrast, negative results were found with NHL in the U.K. (Law et al., 1999), whereas in Sardinia, Italy, there was limited

evidence among men, but not women, of an association between NHL incidence and nitrate concentrations in community water supplies (Cocco et al., 2003).

In two population-based case–control studies of NHL conducted in the United States, no association between nitrate levels in community water supplies and NHL were observed (Freedman et al. 2000; Ward, et al., 2006). Chang et al. (2010) also found no association between drinking water nitrate levels up to 2.86 mg NO_3-N/L (equivalent to 13 mg NO_3^-/L) and increased risk of death from NHL in his combined case–control and ecological study conducted within a Taiwanese population.

Weyer et al. (2001) in analyzing the incidence of NHL in a cohort of women in the USA found a weak inverse association (i.e. reduced risk) between drinking water nitrate levels up to > 2.46 mg NO_3-N/L (equivalent to 11 mg NO_3^-/L) and risk of NHL; after adjustment for confounders, this association strengthened. This study also observed no association between NHL and dietary nitrate.

Different results were obtained in a U.S. case–control study conducted with both sexes by Ward et al. (1996). The average drinking water nitrate levels ranged up to $\geq$ 4 mg NO_3-N/L (equivalent to 18 mg NO_3^-/L). There was a dose–response relationship with a 2-fold increased risk of NHL associated with exposure in the highest quartile of nitrate in drinking water. This relationship was not changed after adjustment for dietary nitrate, vitamin C intake or carotene intake. The authors concluded that long-term exposure to elevated nitrate levels in drinking water may contribute to NHL risk. As part of the same study, the authors found that nitrate levels in private wells were not associated with the risk of NHL after adjusting for pesticide use on the farm (Ward et al., 1996).

An inverse association was observed between NHL and dietary nitrate as part of the same study by Ward et al. (1996). After adjusting for the intake of vitamin C and carotenes, the dietary nitrate relationship was attenuated.

Nitrites

Ward et al. (2010) found no association between processed meat intake and an increased risk of NHL, but rather found an association with plant based sources (baked good and cereals) which could not be explained. No association was seen in an earlier dietary study by Ward et al. (1996).

9.1.3.3 Brain tumours

In general, the potential association between ingested nitrate or nitrite and tumours of the central nervous system (mainly the brain) have been investigated in adults and children separately. When considering nitrate or nitrite levels from either the diet or drinking water, results were mixed; no clear association can be made between brain tumours and nitrate/nitrite.

Nitrates
Studies in adults
Two case-control studies, one in the U.S. (Ward et al., 2005a), and another in Germany (Steindorf et al., 1994), found no association between nitrate levels in public water supplies and adult brain cancer. Mean nitrate exposures were up to > 25.2 mg NO_3-N/L (equivalent to 111 mg NO_3^-/L; Steindorf et al., 1994) and up to > 4.32 mg/ NO_3-N L (equivalent to 19 mg NO_3^-/L; Ward et al., 2005). No evidence of interaction was seen between drinking water nitrate, dietary vitamin

C intake and smoking status. No association was found between increasing tertiles of nitrate level in water from private wells and glioma risk (Ward et al., 2005).

In another U.S. case–control study, Chen et al. (2002) found no association between dietary sources of preformed nitrosamines or high-nitrate vegetables and glioma. After adjusting for potential confounders, an inverse association was observed between the risk of glioma and intakes of dark yellow vegetables and beans.

In a study conducted in Yorkshire, England, the incidence of brain and central nervous system cancers was found to be higher in areas with higher nitrate levels in the drinking water (Barrett et al., 1998).

Studies in children

In a U.S. population-based case–control study conducted by Mueller et al. (2001), childhood brain tumours were not associated with nitrate levels in water supplies; however, women in one of the three study centres, who used private wells as their drinking water source during the pregnancy, had a significantly increased risk of brain cancer in their offspring (Mueller et al., 2001).

However, in an international collaborative case–control study, Mueller et al. (2004) found no significant association between childhood brain tumours (based on 836 childhood cases) and drinking water, although the risk for astroglial tumours showed a non-significant, 2-fold increase for the highest category of nitrate exposure (≥ 50 mg NO_3^-/L)

Nitrites
Studies in adults

In adults, mostly negative results were seen in a review by IARC (2010), as well as in a meta-analysis of 9 studies (Huncharek et al., 2003). Murphy et al. (1998) observed that trends in the incidence of brain tumours and consumption of cured meat in the both age groups (children and adults) do not support an association. Other studies examined the possible interaction between consumption of cured meat and intake of vitamins (e.g., vitamin C), fruit or vegetables. The greatest cancer risk was observed in those having a high intake of cured meats and low intake of antioxidants (Bunin et al., 1994; Preston-Martin et al., 1996; Blowers et al., 1997).

Studies in children

Only one case control study investigated the association between childhood brain tumours and nitrate in drinking water based on data from 4 countries (Mueller et al. 2004). The risk of childhood brain tumours associated with the presence of detectable nitrite at levels of 1 to <5 mg NO_2-N/L (equivalent to 3.3 to < 16 mg NO_2^-/L) were modestly, but not significantly, increased. This association was stronger among children who had astrocytoma who were exposed to 1 to <5 and $\geq$5 mg NO_2-N/L (equivalent to 3.3 to < 16, and $\geq$16 mg NO_2^-/L, respectively).

In dietary studies, several case control studies suggested an association between childhood brain tumours and consumption of cured meats by mothers during pregnancy and/or by the children themselves (Preston-Martin et al., 1996; Pogoda and Preston-Martin, 2001). A meta-analysis which included some of these studies also suggested a limited association between consumption of cured meat and the occurrence of childhood brain tumours (Huncharek and Kupelnick, 2004). In contrast, a prospective cohort study conducted by Michaud et al. (2009) did not suggest an association.

9.1.3.4 Urinary tract tumours

Mixed results were seen with regards to urinary tract tumours and the exposure to nitrate or nitrites.

Nitrates

A positive association was observed between bladder cancer mortality and nitrate in drinking water nitrate in a case control study by Chiu et al. (2007) at levels ≤ 2.86 mg NO_3-N/L (equivalent to 13 mg NO_3^-/L), and in a cohort study by Weyer et al. (2001) at levels > 2.46 mg NO_3-N/L (equivalent to 11 mg NO_3^-/L) in drinking water. However, no association was seen between bladder cancer mortality and nitrate in drinking water in a case–control study conducted by Ward et al. (2003) or in a cohort study by Zeegers et al. (2006). Nitrate levels were higher in these two studies than in the earlier studies that showed a positive association. Dietary intake of vitamin C had no significant impact on the results of both latter studies. Vitamin E and cigarette smoking were not found to influence the results from the Zeegers et al. (2006) study.

Ward et al. (2007) found no association of renal cell carcinoma with nitrate levels up to 2.78 mg NO_3-N/L (equivalent to 12 mg NO_3^-/L) in public water supplies. However, higher nitrate exposure [> 5 mg NO_3-N/L (equivalent to > 22 mg NO_3^-/L) for 10+ years] was associated with an increased risk among subgroups with red meat intake above the median (OR = 1.91; 95% CI = 1.04 – 3.51), or vitamin C intake below the median (OR = 1.90; 95% CI = 1.01–3.56).

Volkmer et al. (2005) evaluated the effect of nitrate levels in drinking water on the incidence of urological malignancies in two groups in Germany exposed to different nitrate levels (i.e., 10 and 60 mg NO_3^-/L). For the highly exposed group, they found an association with urothelial cancer in both sexes, with an inverse correlation with testicular tumours and no correlation with renal, penile and prostatic tumours.

Nitrites

In a population-based case-control study, Ward et al. (2003) found no association between urinary tract tumours and dietary sources of nitrite in both women and men; animal and plant sources of nitrite were evaluated separately. Among men, the highest quartile of nitrite from plant sources was associated with a modest elevated risk (OR = 1.3; 95% CI = 1.0-1.6) but no trend was seen as intake increased.

9.1.3.5 Other tumour sites (upper aerodigestive tract, pancreas, thyroid gland)
Nitrates

Ward et al. (2010) investigated the association between nitrate intake from public water supplies and diet and the risk of thyroid cancer (incidence) and self-reported hypothyroidism and hyperthyroidism (prevalence) in a cohort of 21,977 older women in Iowa (U.S.), who had used the same water supply for more than 10 years. They estimated nitrate ingestion from drinking water using a public database of nitrate measurements. Dietary intake was estimated using a food frequency questionnaire and levels from the published literature. They found an increased risk of thyroid cancer with exposure to public water supplies containing nitrate concentrations exceeding 5 mg NO_3-N/L (equivalent to 22.1 mg NO_3^-/L) for more than 5 years (RR = 2.6; 95% CI = 1.1–6.2). Increasing intake of dietary nitrate was associated with an increased risk of thyroid cancer (highest versus lowest quartile, RR = 2.9; 95% CI = 1.0–8.1; *P* for trend = 0.046). The authors concluded that nitrate may play a role in the aetiology of thyroid cancer and warrants further study.

No association was reported between drinking water nitrate and risk of pancreatic cancer (Weyer et al., 2001; Coss et al., 2004). A cohort study conducted by Knekt et al. (1999) found no association between dietary nitrate and head and neck cancers, however, a case–control study by Rogers et al. (1995) found a significant inverse association between dietary nitrate intake and oral and laryngeal cancer.

Negative associations were reported between exposure to nitrate in drinking water and risk of pancreatic cancer (Weyer et al., 2001; Coss et al., 2004). No association was reported between dietary nitrate and head and neck cancers (cohort study: Knekt et al., 1999). However, a significant inverse association has been reported between dietary nitrate intake and oral and laryngeal cancer (case–control study: Rogers et al., 1995).

Nitrites

Coss et al. (2004) observed a slightly elevated risk of pancreatic cancer for the high quartile of consumption of dietary nitrite. However, when animal sources of nitrite were evaluated separately, risks were higher and statistically significant.

No association of nasopharyngeal cancer with nitrite intake was seen in Taiwanese adults, but a positive association was found in children based on recall data from the mothers (Ward et al., 2000).

No association was found between dietary nitrite intake and cancers of the head and neck in a cohort study (Knekt et al., 1999) and oral and laryngeal cancers in a case-control study (Rogers et al., 1995).

9.1.4   Reproductive and developmental toxicity

Evidence suggests that nitrate concentrations greater than 45 mg/L in drinking water are associated with methaemoglobinaemia (see section 9.1.1), but evidence of any association with foetal mortality, growth restriction or birth defects is weak. However, there are critical data gaps in individual exposure assessment, co-exposure to other contaminants and exposure to nitrate from food sources, which is likely more relevant than exposure from drinking water.

Reviews of the reproductive and developmental effects of exposure to nitrate/nitrite in drinking water are provided by Manassaram et al. (2006) and a publication from a symposium sponsored by the International Society for Environmental Epidemiology (Ward et al., 2005a). Manassaram et al. (2006) concluded that the current literature does not provide sufficient evidence of a causal relationship between exposure to nitrate in drinking water and adverse reproductive and developmental effects; epidemiological evidence is sparse and suggestive at best. However, findings of excess birth defects in some of the studies reviewed suggest the need for further studies. Ward et al. (2005a) concluded that the results of a few published studies regarding water nitrate and reproductive outcomes have been inconsistent, but elevated risks for neural tube defects have been observed after intake of nitrate. The Manassaram et al. (2006) and Ward et al. (2005a) conclusions were based on reviews of foetal mortality, growth restriction and birth defects. From these reviews, no significant increased risk of foetal mortality (spontaneous abortions and stillbirths) was associated with drinking water nitrate levels of ≤ 55 and 43–123 mg/L (Gelperin et al., 1975; Super et al., 1981; Aschengrau et al., 1989, 1993); however, an increased risk was reported between 5 and 45 mg/L (Scragg et al., 1982; CDC, 1996). In addition, three cases of spontaneous abortion were reported with nitrate levels of 19.0, 26 and 19.2 mg/L as nitrate-nitrogen in wells serving the homes of the pregnant women; however, other causative factors and occurrence by chance could not be ruled out (CDC, 1996). Growth restriction

(prematurity, intrauterine growth restriction and decreased birth weight) was associated with nitrate levels of ≥ 3.1 and 8–54 mg/L (Tabacova et al., 1997, 1998; Bukowski et al., 2001), but not with levels of > 20 mg/L (Super et al., 1981). Reports of birth defects (central nervous system and cardiac) were not significantly associated with drinking water nitrate levels of 0.2–4.5,>2, > 3.5, 5, 26 and > 45 mg/L (Arbuckle et al., 1988; Ericson et al., 1988; Aschengrau et al., 1993; Croen et al., 2001; Cedergren et al., 2002; Brender et al., 2004). However, an increased risk of anencephaly was associated with nitrate level above 45 mg/L (Croen et al., 2001), and risk of any malformation was greater with > 5 mg/L water nitrate (Dorsch et al., 1984).

Since the publication of the above reviews, one relevant study has been published. A potential correlation between maximal nitrate concentrations in drinking water and incidence of sudden infant death syndrome was reported (George et al., 2001); however, many limitations preclude a conclusion being drawn from this study.

9.2   Effects on experimental animals
9.2.1   *Acute toxicity*
The acute oral toxicity of nitrate in experimental animals is generally low, with median lethal dose (LD_{50}) values above 3100 mg/kg bw/day. Nitrite is more toxic, with an LD_{50} of 120 mg/kg bw/day (Boink et al., 1999). Thus, values for acute oral nitrite toxicity in experimental animals are within the range reported for humans (33–250 mg/kg bw/day, reported in Section 9.1.1).

9.2.2   *Short-term exposure*
9.2.2.1 *Methaemoglobinaemia*
It is important to remember that rats are 10–100 times more resistant to acute methaemoglobinemia than humans, as rats have limited conversion of nitrate to nitrite (Boink et al., 1999). Consequently, nitrite studies are more appropriate than nitrate studies in rats for evaluating methaemoglobinemia. Shuval and Gruener (1972) reported elevated levels of methaemoglobin (5%, 12% and 22%) in rats (< 3 months old; eight per treatment) exposed to sodium nitrite at 1000, 2000 and 3000 mg/L (equivalent to 667, 1334 or 2001 mg NO_2^-/L) for 24 months, respectively, but no elevated levels in rats exposed to sodium nitrite at 100 mg/L (equivalent to 66.7 mg NO_2^-/L). In a dose range–finding study (Maekawa et al., 1982) using a total of 240 F344 rats of both sexes, the maximum tolerated sodium nitrite dose was 0.25% in drinking water and 5% nitrate in feed for 6 weeks. Of the rats (10 male and 10 female per dose) given 20 mL drinking water with 0.06%, 0.125%, 0.25%, 0.5% or 1% sodium nitrite, four female rats in the 1% group died, while one male and one female in the 0.5% group died. Of the rats (10 male and 10 female per dose) given 1.25%, 2.5%, 5%, 10% or 20% sodium nitrate in feed, all female rats and seven male rats given 20% sodium nitrate died. Abnormal colour in the blood and spleen due to methaemoglobin was marked in rats of the two highest dose groups from both studies.

Increased methaemoglobin levels were also measured by Til et al. (1988). Weanling Wistar rats (10 of each sex per dose) were administered potassium nitrite at 0, 1, 100, 300, 1000 or 3000 mg/L (equivalent to 0, 0.5, 54, 162.3, 541 or 1623 mg NO_2^-/L) in drinking water for 13 weeks. The percentage of haemoglobin that was methylated was increased in rats exposed to 3000 mg/L (females, $P < 0.05$; males, $P < 0.01$). Subsequently, Til et al. (1997) report significantly elevated methaemoglobin concentrations in weanling Wistar rats (10 of each sex per dose) given

100 or 3000 mg potassium nitrite/L (equivalent to 54 or 1623 mg NO_2^-/L) but not in rats given 0, 12.5, 25, 50 mg potassium nitrite/L (equivalent to 0, 6.8, 13.5 or 27 mg NO_2^-/L) in drinking water for 13 weeks.

In a 14-week study (NTP, 2001), 10 male and 10 female rat pairs were exposed to sodium nitrite at 0, 375, 750, 1500, 3000 or 5000 mg/L in drinking water (equivalent to 0, 250, 500, 1000, 2001 or 3335 mg NO_2^-/L). One female exposed to 3000 mg/L (equivalent to 2001 mg NO_2^-/L) died before the end of the study. Clinical findings included brown discoloration in eyes and cyanosis of mouth, tongue, ears and feet of males at the two highest doses and of females at the three highest doses. Methaemoglobin concentrations were significantly elevated in all exposed groups of females and at 750 mg/L (500 mg NO_2^-/L) and higher in males throughout the 14-week study; effects occurred by day 5 and continued throughout the study (NTP, 2001). However, brownish discoloration and cyanosis were not observed in mice exposed to the same dose regimen as in the above rat study, possibly due to higher erythrocyte methaemoglobin reductase activity in mice than in rats (NTP, 2001). Blood samples from rats drinking water with nitrite at 20 mmol/L showed little methaemoglobinaemia, whereas a 5-fold increase in methaemoglobinaemia was observed in rats that drank water containing nitrite at 36 mmol/L. Upon subsequent prolongation of exposure, methaemoglobin levels were reduced remarkably, suggesting metabolic adaptation to prolonged high nitrite exposure (Boink et al., 1999).

Based on the above studies, the nitrate concentrations tested in animals were high and the lowest nitrite concentration that significantly elevated methaemoglobin levels was 250 mg/L.

9.2.2.2 *Thyroid effects*

There is evidence that nitrate exposure alters the thyroid in experimental animals. Groups of 10 female Wistar rats (3 months old) received sodium nitrate in their drinking water at 0, 50, 100, 250 or 500 mg/L over a 30-week period (equivalent to 0, 36.5, 72.9, 182.3 or 364.5 mg NO_3^-/L; Eskiocak et al., 2005). The weight of the thyroid gland was significantly increased in all treatment groups relative to controls, whereas uptake of radiolabelled iodine by the thyroid was decreased in the 50 mg/L group but was not significantly different from control levels until doses were increased to 250 or 500 mg/L, at which uptake was increased, perhaps as a compensatory mechanism ($P < 0.05$ and $P < 0.01$, respectively). Effects on serum hormone levels varied with dose (as low as 50 mg/L), but consistent effects indicative of clear hypothyroidism were seen at 250 and 500 mg/L (i.e., reduced serum total T_3 [$P < 0.01$ and $P < 0.05$, respectively], reduced free T_3 [both $P < 0.01$] and reduced free T_4 [$P < 0.01$ and $P < 0.05$, respectively]). Histopathological changes were also seen at the two highest doses. Although the study did not account for iodide intake or measure nitrate levels in control water, these findings suggest that nitrate impairs thyroid function involving the HPT axis.

Similarly, altered thyroid hormone levels, histological modifications and increased thyroid weights were reported by Zaki et al. (2004). Male Wistar rats (12 per group) received potassium nitrate in tap water at 13.55 (control), 50, 100, 150 or 500 mg/L (equivalent to 8.3, 30.7, 61.4, 92.1 or 307 mg NO_3^-/L) for 5 months *ad libitum*. Potassium nitrate at 150 mg/L reduced plasma T_3 levels by 34% ($P < 0.05$) and T_4 levels by 12% (but reductions were not statistically significant). Exposure to potassium nitrate at 500 mg/L reduced levels of T_3 and T_4 by 44% and 30%, respectively ($P < 0.05$). Exposure to potassium nitrate at 100, 150 and 500 mg/L dose-dependently increased thyroid weights (21%, 45% and 77%; $P < 0.05$). Histological examination revealed vacuolization and an increase in thyroid follicle size in rats exposed to potassium nitrate at 150 or 500 mg/L. A negative correlation between thyroid weight and plasma T_3 levels

($r = -0.31$; $P < 0.05$) was observed, as well as between thyroid weight and plasma T_4 levels ($r = -0.37$; $P < 0.05$). The study attempted to control for iodide intake by feeding a controlled diet. The observed effects further support nitrate's impairment of thyroidal function through the HPT axis.

A study from India (Mukhopadhyay et al., 2005) found that rats fed diet containing 3% potassium nitrate for 4 weeks exhibited increased thyroid gland weight ($P < 0.001$), TSH levels ($P < 0.001$) and slightly elevated iodide excretion ($P < 0.001$) compared with controls. In contrast, thyroid peroxidase activity ($P < 0.01$), serum T_4 levels ($P < 0.01$) and serum T_3 levels ($P < 0.001$) were all reduced. This study provides further support for the role of nitrates in altering the function of the thyroid. Decreased thyroidal iodine uptake as well as T_3 and T_4 concentrations were also reported after rats were fed a diet containing 3% potassium nitrate for 6 weeks (Jahreis et al., 1991). However, no significant differences in thyroidal function (measured by T_3 and T_4 levels) were observed in any adult Beagle dogs after receiving sodium nitrate in drinking water at 0, 300, 600 or 1000 mg/L (equivalent to 0, 218.7, 437.4 or 729 mg NO_3^-/L) for 1 year or in any puppies from the dams receiving the above doses (Kelley et al., 1974).

Despite some deficiencies in these studies (e.g., thyroid gland histology—generally the most definitive measure of thyroid disruption—was poorly done), they provide support for the role of nitrates in altering the function of the thyroid through the HPT axis.

9.2.2.3 Effects on the vascular system and adrenals

Evidence supports the role of nitrite in induction of hypertrophy of the adrenal zona glomerulosa by reducing blood pressure and stimulating the renin–angiotensin axis. Shuval and Gruener (1972) found evidence of pulmonary and coronary effects when exposing rats (< 3 months old; eight per treatment) for 24 months to drinking water containing sodium nitrite at 1000–2000 mg/L (equivalent to 667-1334 mg NO_2^-/L). Further study revealed that nitrite exposure leads to vasodilatation, relaxation of smooth muscle, lowering of blood pressure (Gangolli et al., 1994) and transient hypotension in rats (Boink et al., 1999). In two freely moving Wistar rats, potassium nitrite decreased the mean arterial pressure and increased the heart rate; potassium chloride had no effect (Vleeming et al., 1997). Intravenous administration of nitrite to anaesthetized rats induced an immediate, dose-dependent decrease in blood pressure, which preceded an increase in methaemoglobin concentration, suggesting that hypotension is the primary effect of nitrite; a single dose of 30 µmol/kg bw caused a 10–20% decrease in blood pressure (Vleeming et al., 1997). However, lowering of blood pressure is not necessarily adverse, but can actually be beneficial (Lundberg et al., 2004, 2008).

The adrenals regulate blood pressure via the renin–angiotensin–aldosterone axis. Both sexes of weanling Wistar rats (10 of each sex per dose) exposed to potassium nitrite in drinking water at 1, 100, 300, 1000 or 3000 mg/L (equivalent to 0.5, 54, 162, 541 or 1623 mg NO_2^-/L) for 13 weeks experienced hypertrophy of the adrenal zona glomerulosa at all dose levels (Til et al., 1988). The incidence and severity of hypertrophy of the adrenal zona glomerulosa increased as levels of nitrite in drinking water increased. Adrenal changes are thought to relate to the well-known vasodilating properties of nitrite and to dilatation and thinning of blood vessels following nitrite administration. Vasodilatation lowers blood pressure, which stimulates the renin–angiotensin–aldosterone axis, resulting in increased aldosterone production by the adrenal zona glomerulosa (Til et al., 1988). Other rodent studies have found treatment-related hypertrophy of the adrenal zona glomerulosa occurring as an indirect effect of nitrite exposure, as corresponding changes in plasma nitrite or kidney function were not observed (Til et al., 1997). A later study

suggested that the mild hypertrophy was a physiological adaptation to nitrite-induced vasodilatation rather than a harmful lesion (Boink et al., 1999). Inhibition of angiotensin-converting enzyme indicates that the effects were produced indirectly via stimulation of the renin–angiotensin axis (Vleeming et al., 1997; Boink et al., 1999). Thus, administration of nitrite to rats in drinking water likely causes repeated decreases in blood pressure, thus repeatedly activating the renin–angiotensin–aldosterone axis, which may have caused hypertrophy of the adrenal zona glomerulosa.

9.2.2.4 Effects on kidneys

Weanling Wistar rats (10 of each sex per dose) were administered potassium nitrite in their drinking water at 1, 100, 300, 1000 or 3000 mg/L (equivalent to 0.5, 54, 162, 541 or 1623 mg NO_2^-/L) for 13 weeks. Absolute and relative weights of spleen and kidneys in females and relative weight of kidneys in males increased at the highest exposure. However, increases in relative kidney weights were not accompanied by treatment-related histopathological renal changes (Til et al., 1988). In a follow-up study by Til et al. (1997), weanling Wistar rats (10 of each sex per dose) were given 0, 12.5, 25, 50, 100 or 3000 mg potassium nitrite/L (equivalent to 0, 6.8, 13.5, 27, 54 or 1623 mg NO_2^-/L) in drinking water for 13 weeks. As in the previous study, relative kidney weights were significantly increased in both high-dose groups (Til et al., 1997).

9.2.3. Long-term exposure and carcinogenicity
9.2.3.1 Ingested nitrate

The studies in which sodium nitrate was administered either in drinking water or in diet to rodents showed that nitrate has a low chronic toxicity.

In an 18-month study, female NMRI mice (100 per group) received calcium nitrate at 0, 100 or 1000 mg/L (equivalent to 0, 61 or 608 mg NO_3^-/L) daily in drinking water (equivalent to 0, 30 or 300 mg/kg bw/day as calcium nitrate, or 0, 18 or 182 mg NO_3^-/kg bw/day). The mice in the high-dose group lost weight and died prematurely. There was no increase in tumour incidence in the nitrate-treated groups (Mascher and Marth, 1993).

In a 2-year carcinogenicity study, F344 rats (50 of each sex per group) were given diets containing 0%, 2.5% or 5% (0, 25 or 50 g/L) sodium nitrate *ad libitum* (equivalent to 0, 1250 or 2500 mg/kg bw/day or 0, 910 or 1820 mg/kg bw/day expressed as nitrate ion). The survival rate of nitrate-dosed animals was significantly higher ($P < 0.05$) than that of the controls. At 2500 mg/kg bw/day, slight to moderate reduced body weight gain was observed. No significant difference in tumour incidence was observed in this study, in which the animals showed a high incidence of spontaneous tumours. The only significant result was a reduction of the incidence of mononuclear cell leukaemias ($P < 0.01$) in the experimental groups (Maekawa et al., 1982).

Other studies conducted in rats (Lijinsky et al., 1973a) and mice (Greenblatt and Mirvish, 1973; Sugiyama et al., 1979) demonstrated that nitrate has no carcinogenic activity.

9.2.3.2 Ingested nitrite

Rat feeding studies

Aoyagi et al. (1980) reported a significant increase in liver tumours ($P < 0.05$) in male non-inbred Wistar rats given sodium nitrite at a concentration of 1600 ppm in pelleted feed for about 20 months. However, the NOCs (NDMA and *N*-nitrosopyrrolidine [NPYR]) found in the

pellets at levels that were correlated with those of the added sodium nitrite were suspected as the cause of these positive results.

In another study, significant increased incidences of liver neoplasms were observed only in female F344 rats receiving sodium nitrite in feed at 2000 mg/kg (equivalent to 1334 mg NO_2^-/kg) for 2 years (Lijinsky et al., 1983; Lijinsky, 1984). In addition to the liver neoplasms, Lijinsky et al. (1983) also observed a reduced incidence of monocytic leukaemia in rats of both sexes for each of the nitrite-treated groups. However, an IARC (2010) work group noted that this study lacked data for life parameters, including growth curve and feed consumption as well as intake of sodium nitrite; thus, the effect of nutritional condition on the reduction of leukaemia incidence could not be measured.

In a long-term feeding study carried out in F344 rats (50 per group) exposed to either 0.2% or 0.5% by weight (w/w) sodium nitrite for up to 115 weeks, there was no evidence of carcinogenic activity of sodium nitrite. Rather, there was a dose-related reduction in the incidence of lymphomas, leukaemia and testicular interstitial cell tumours (Grant and Butler, 1989).

In a large-scale study sponsored by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (Newberne, 1979), pregnant Sprague-Dawley rats were administered sodium nitrite at concentrations of 0, 250, 500, 1000 or 2000 mg/kg in an agar gel casein diet; 0, 1000 or 2000 mg/L in drinking water; 0, 1000 or 2000 mg/kg in a commercial chow; and 1000 mg/kg in the dry form of the agar gel casein diet. Exposure began 5 days before the dams gave birth and continued for the lifetime (up to 26 months) of the dams and pups. Malignant lymphoma was increased in all groups fed nitrite (the overall combined incidence was 10.2% vs. 5.4% in control rats). The feed samples were analysed for the presence of nitrosamines, but none were detected; thus, it seemed unlikely that preformed nitrosamines were responsible for the observed effect on the lymphatic system. Similar results (27% of tumours in the lymphoreticular system vs. 6% in controls) had been reported as an incidental observation by Shank and Newberne (1976) in a study in which F_1 and F_2 generations of rats of the same strain had been exposed from conception until death to a dietary sodium nitrite concentration of 1000 mg/kg. However, a governmental interagency working group (FDA, 1980a, 1980b) drew different conclusions from those of Newberne (1979), based upon examination of the same histological preparations. The working group diagnosed only a small number of lesions as lymphomas and assessed an incidence of approximately 1% in both treated and control groups. This discrepancy concerned the differentiation between the lymphomas diagnosed by Newberne (1979) and the extramedullar haemotopoiesis, plasmacytosis or histiocytic sarcomas diagnosed by the working group. These latter tumours have no known human counterpart. The incidence of other types of tumours was not increased.

Rat drinking water studies

Male Wistar rats exposed to 0.2% (2 g/L) sodium nitrite in drinking water for 9 months showed increased activities of the following enzymes: liver microsomal lipoperoxidase, liver lysosomal phosphatase and cathepsin, and cytosolic superoxide dismutase (Darad et al., 1983). In this study, the activities of both the lysosomal and cytosolic enzymes were indicative of free radical–mediated damage to the cellular and subcellular membranes in rats.

Chow et al. (1980) administered sodium nitrite at a concentration of 2 g/L in drinking water (equivalent to 1.33 g NO_2^-/to male Sprague-Dawley rats for 14 months. In addition to decreased liver weights, the animals also showed increased lung weights and a higher incidence

of pulmonary lesions. The measurement of some blood parameters showed decreased plasma vitamin E and higher levels of reduced glutathione in red blood cells.

In a carcinogenicity study, F344 rats (50 of each sex per group) received sodium nitrite in drinking water at concentrations of 0, 1250 or 2500 mg/L (equivalent to 0, 834 or 1667 mg NO_2^-/L) for 2 years (Maekawa et al., 1982). In the female high-dose group, the mean body weight was decreased by more than 10% compared with controls after 40 weeks. The survival after 100 weeks was significantly higher in the male groups. No carcinogenic effects were observed in this study, in which the animals showed a high incidence of spontaneous tumours. However, a significant decrease in incidence of mononuclear cell leukaemias (a very common spontaneous neoplasm in F344 rats) was found in the experimental groups compared with controls. A similar decrease in incidence of monocytic leukaemia was later reported in F344 rats of both sexes exposed to sodium nitrite at either 2 g/L in drinking water (1.33 g NO_2^-/L) or 2 g/kg in diet (1.33 g NO_2^-/ kg) (Lijinsky et al., 1983) and only in male F344 rats (50 per group) exposed to dietary sodium nitrite concentrations of 2000 or 5000 mg/kg (1334 or 3335 mg NO_2^-/kg) for up to 115 weeks (Grant and Butler, 1989).

More recently, a 2-year carcinogenicity study for sodium nitrite was conducted under the National Toxicology Program (NTP, 2001) in F344/N rats. In this study, F344/N rats (50 of each sex per group) were given drinking water containing sodium nitrite at concentrations of 0, 750, 1500 or 3000 mg/L, equal to average doses of 0, 35, 70 and 130 mg/kg bw/day for males (equivalent to 0, 23, 47 and 87 mg NO_2^-/kg bw/day) and 0, 40, 80 and 150 mg/kg bw/day for females (equivalent to 0, 27, 53 and 100 mg NO_2^-/kg bw/day), for 2 years. The survival of treated groups was similar to that of controls. Decreased mean body weight and water consumption were seen in the highest-dose male and female rats, and the water consumption of the other treated groups was generally lower only after week 14. The incidences of fibroadenoma were increased in different organs in females, particularly the mammary glands. However, these fibroadenomas occur at a high background incidence, and no increase was seen at the highest dose. The incidences of hyperplasia of the forestomach epithelium in males and females at the highest dose were significantly higher than in controls. The NTP (2001) concluded that there was no evidence of carcinogenicity of sodium nitrite under the conditions of the study.

Significant increased incidences (18% vs. 2% in control group started 11 months earlier, P < 0.002) of forestomach squamous papillomas were also observed in MRC Wistar rats of both sexes exposed to one high dose level of sodium nitrite at 3000 mg/L in drinking water for at least 1 year and observed for life (Mirvish et al., 1980).

Lijinsky (1984) observed significant increased incidences of liver neoplasms in female (not male) F344 rats receiving sodium nitrite in drinking water at 2000 mg/L (1334 mg NO_2^-/L) for 2 years. Interestingly, there was no increase in tumour incidence in Sprague-Dawley rats also exposed to sodium nitrite at 2000 mg/L (1334 mg NO_2^-/L) for the same duration (Taylor and Lijinsky, 1975).

Mouse gavage and feeding study

Outbred ICR mice of both sexes (30 of each sex) administered sodium nitrite at 70 mg/kg bw (47 mg NO_2^-/kg) once a week by gavage for 10 weeks and allowed to live without treatment for up to 18 months did not show significant increases in tumour (lymphomas, lung, liver) incidences (Yoshida et al., 1993). Similarly, in a feeding study in which male and female C57BL/6 mice were given sodium nitrite (5000 mg/kg or 3335 mg NO_2^-/kg) in feed for 1 year,

the animals did not exhibit higher tumour incidence compared with the controls (Krishna Murthy et al., 1979). No 2-year dosed feed studies in mice have been reported.

Mouse drinking water study

Swiss mice (40 of each sex) exposed 5 days/week for 28 weeks to sodium nitrite in drinking water at 1000 mg/L (the chronic maximum tolerated dose in this study) (667 mg NO_2^-/L) and then returned to tap water until 40 weeks did not exhibit lung tumours (Greenblatt et al., 1971). Negative results were also reported for male strain A mice (40 per group) exposed to sodium nitrite in drinking water at 1000 or 2000 mg/L (667 or 1334 mg NO_2^-/L), 5 days/week for 20–25 weeks, and killed 10–13 weeks later (Greenblatt and Mirvish, 1973).

Lifetime exposure of VM strain mice (known for their susceptibility to spontaneous glioma formation) to sodium nitrite in their drinking water at 2000 mg/L both *in utero* and throughout their lifespan did not increase the incidence of cerebral glioma (Hawkes et al., 1992).

Lifetime exposure of female C57BL/6 mice (before and during pregnancy, during lactation and until natural death) and female (C57BL/6 × BALB/c)F$_1$ mice (hereafter B6CF$_1$) progeny to sodium nitrite in drinking water at 184 or 1840 mg/L (equivalent to 30.7 or 310 mg/kg bw/day; 20.5 or 205 mg NO_2^-/kg bw/day) did not show any increase in tumour incidence (Anderson et al., 1985). However, significant increases in lymphomas ($P = 0.029$) and lung tumours ($P < 0.05$) were observed only in the male B6CF$_1$ mice exposed from conception to the lower dose of 184 mg/L, but not to 1840 mg/L, the higher dose.

In order to ascertain the possible tumorigenicity of sodium nitrite, a chronic toxicity study was conducted in ICR mice (50 of each sex per group), which received for more than 18 months drinking water containing sodium nitrite at 0, 1250, 2500 or 5000 mg/L (highest dose being the maximum tolerated dose) (equivalent to 0, 834, 1667 or 3335 mg NO_2^-/L) (Inai et al., 1979). No differences in tumour incidence, development time of each histologically classified tumour or tumour type were observed between exposed groups and controls.

In a 2-year carcinogenicity study (NTP, 2001), B6C3F$_1$ mice (50 of each sex per group) were exposed daily to drinking water containing sodium nitrite at concentrations of 0, 750, 1500 or 3000 mg/L (equal to average doses of 0, 60, 120 and 220 mg/kg bw/day [0, 40, 80 and 147 mg NO_2^-/kg bw/day] for males and 0, 45, 90 and 165 mg/kg bw/day [0, 30, 60 and 110 mg NO_2^-/kg bw/day] for females). Overall, there was no difference in survival between exposed groups compared with controls, although mean body weights were lower in females treated with the highest dose. Exposed groups generally consumed less water than the control groups. The incidences of squamous cell papilloma or carcinoma (combined) in the forestomach of female mice occurred with a "positive dose-related trend" (not statistically significant) with respective frequencies of 1/50, 0/50, 1/50 and 5/50 at 0, 45, 90 and 165 mg/kg bw/day (equivalent to 0, 30, 60 and 110 mg NO_2^-/kg bw/day). The incidence of hyperplasia of the glandular stomach epithelium was significantly higher in males treated at the highest dose. From the overall results of the study, the NTP (2001) concluded that there was equivocal evidence of carcinogenic activity on the basis of the positive trend in the incidence of squamous cell papilloma and carcinoma (combined) of the forestomach.

Cancer promotion

The role of nitrite in cancer promotion was studied. In a multi-organ model in which F344 rats (15 per group) were initiated with various carcinogens, a high dose of sodium nitrite in drinking water (3000 mg/L, equivalent to 2000 mg NO_2^-/L) strongly enhanced the development of forestomach lesions but inhibited the development of glandular stomach lesions when these animals were given the phenolic antioxidants catechol, 3-methoxycatechol or butylated hydroxyanisole, with or without prior carcinogen exposure. Moreover, the carcinogenesis-promoting effects of catechol in this study were evident only in combination with sodium nitrite (Hirose et al., 1993). The promotion of forestomach carcinogenesis by sodium nitrite was also observed in a study in which male Fischer rats pretreated with *N*-methyl-*N′*-nitro-*N*-nitrosoguanidine were exposed to 0.3% sodium nitrite in their drinking water (Yoshida et al., 1994).

Exposure of Balb/c mice to lower doses of sodium nitrite in drinking water (0, 5, 50, 500 and 2000 mg/L, equivalent to 0, 3, 33, 333 and 1334 mg NO_2^-/L) also accelerated leukaemia development induced by the Rauscher, Mazurenko, and Gross leukaemia viruses (Ilnitsky and Kolpakova, 1997).

Conclusion

Overall, in most of the studies in which sodium nitrite has been tested for tumorigenicity (also transplacental carcinogenesis experiments) in rats (Newberne, 1979; Mirvish et al., 1980; Maekawa et al., 1982; Lijinsky et al., 1983) or mice (Inai et al., 1979; Hawkes et al., 1992), there were no significant increased incidences of tumours compared with untreated controls. The results of the studies have not provided consistent evidence for carcinogenicity of nitrite *per se*, because the tumours reported in the lymphatic tissue (Shank and Newberne, 1976; Newberne, 1979), forestomach (Mirvish et al., 1980; NTP, 2001) and liver (Aoyagi et al., 1980; Lijinsky et al., 1983; Lijinsky, 1984) have not been confirmed in other studies (Inai et al., 1979; Maekawa et al., 1982; Lijinsky et al., 1983; Grant and Butler, 1989). Therefore, the carcinogenicity of sodium nitrite in rodents still appears to be controversial.

9.2.4   *Concurrent administration of nitrate/nitrite with nitrosatable compounds*

Nitrate and nitrite *per se* were not carcinogenic in experimental animals in most of the studies in which they were administered alone (Mirvish et al., 1980; Lijinsky et al., 1983; WHO, 2007). However, when nitrite was co-administered with *N*-nitrosatable compounds (hereafter nitrosatable compounds), which are amines or amides, tumours, mutagenicity or other toxic effects similar to those induced by the carcinogenic NOCs (nitrosamines and nitrosamides) were seen, suggesting their endogenous formation. This was not the case for the co-administration of nitrate and nitrosatable compounds to rodents.

A wide range of toxicity, mutagenicity and carcinogenicity assays have been performed to assess the biological effects of the co-administration of nitrosatable compounds with either nitrate or nitrite.

The co-administration of nitrate and nitrosatable compounds to rodents showed negative results (Greenblatt and Mirvish, 1973; Friedman and Staub, 1976). However, there is strong evidence that nitrate must be initially reduced to nitrite, one of the precursors of the endogenous nitrosation reaction, in order to take part in this process (IARC, 2010). It has also been reported that rodents (rats and mice) have fewer bacteria in their mouths than humans and are unable to

reduce oral nitrate to nitrite (Mirvish, 1994). Indeed, when Fong et al. (1980) exposed Sprague-Dawley rats (50 males per group) chronically infected with known strains of *E. coli* to fixed doses of nitrate (1000 mg/L) and aminopyrine (1000 mg/L) in drinking water for 1.5 years, they found tumours that were not seen in uninfected rats. The authors suggested that bacterial infections are important in subsequent tumour induction in animals whose diet contains high concentrations of nitrate and amines. Thus, the reduction of nitrate to nitrite by *E. coli* infecting the rats would explain the positive results from the above study.

The co-administration of nitrite and nitrosatable compounds in drinking water or feed to hamsters, mice and rats leads to toxic effects characteristic of the related NOCs (nitrosamines or nitrosamides). These effects included systemic effects, modification of the genetic material (reduction of deoxyribonucleic acid [DNA] synthesis, methylation of the nucleic acids) and increase in tumour incidence. Nitrite and nitrosatable compounds are both known precursors for NOC formation. In contrast, the administration of the NOC precursors alone did not cause such effects (Asahina et al., 1971; Lijinsky and Greenblatt, 1972; Astill and Mulligan, 1977). Among the nitrosatable compounds studied are drugs, pesticides and dietary compounds (foodstuffs).

After oral administration of nitrosatable precursors (e.g., secondary amines [DMA, methylbenzylamine] or tertiary amines [aminopyrine]) together with high doses of sodium nitrite (in feed or drinking water, or in one of their combinations), toxic effects characteristic of the related NOCs were observed in mice, rats and hamsters. These effects included progressive inertia, anorexia, ascites, weight loss, mortality and hepatic necrosis. However, the administration of sodium nitrite or the nitrosatable precursor alone did not cause such effects (Asahina et al., 1971; Lijinsky et al., 1973b; Astill and Mulligan, 1977; Lin and Ho, 1992).

It has been suggested that nitrite may react *in vivo* with nitrosatable substances to form carcinogenic NOCs, the formation of which could increase the risk of cancer (Lijinsky and Taylor, 1977; Lijinsky, 1984). As the stomach is well known to be a site of the nitrosation reaction, the NOCs were assumed, in most of the studies, to have been formed within it and not in the diet, although chemical analyses for NOCs in the diet were not performed. Numerous environmental nitrosatable compounds, including dietary components, drugs, and agricultural and industrial chemicals, have been shown to induce tumours through the endogenous formation of NOCs when fed to experimental animals simultaneously with nitrite (Yamamoto et al., 1989). In a number of long-term toxicity studies, oral administration of sodium nitrite in drinking water together with specific nitrosatable compounds in feed (or vice versa) or both substances either in drinking water or in feed induced a variety of tumours in rats, mice and hamsters. Both precursors (sodium nitrite and the nitrosatable substance) were usually given separately or mixed just before administration to animals, in order to avoid any chemical reaction before ingestion. Most of these combinations resulted in increased tumour incidences, regardless of the duration of the exposure (see Tables 2 and 3 below).

As reviewed by Mirvish (1975b), amines and amides causing increases in tumour incidence include *n*-dibutylamine, dimethylurea, *n*-methylaniline, piperazine, morpholine, butylurea, ethylurea, ethylthiourea, methylurea, aminopyrine, bis(2-hydroxypropyl)amine, diphenylamine, heptamethyleneamine, *N*-methylbenzylamine, *N*-methylaniline, imidazolidinone and various environmental chemicals and drugs, including oxytetracycline, disulfiram, dimethyldodecylamine-*N*-oxide, diphenylhydramine hydrochloride, *N*-methylcyclohexylamine, imidazoline, *N*-methyl-*N*′-nitroguanidine and N^6-methyladenosine. No tumours were induced by feeding nitrite plus the strongly basic amines diethylamine, DMA and piperidine or nitrite plus the

amides *N*-methylacetamide, *N*-methylurethane, *N*-ethylurethane, phenylurea, 1-methyl-3-acetylurea or hydantoin, although the corresponding nitroso derivatives are known carcinogens.

In some instances, food extracts were used as the sources of nitrosatable precursors, a condition that is closer to actual human exposure.

The target organs for cancer were also diversified, including liver, lungs, lymphatic system, forestomach, urinary bladder and uterus (see Tables 2 and 3 below). Most of the time, the tumours developed were reported as being characteristically the same as those induced by the presumed nitroso derivatives of the nitrosatable compounds, suggesting their endogenous formation.

9.2.4.1 *Short-term exposure leading to cancer*

Some of the studies in which the co-administration of nitrite and amines or amides to experimental animals, for less than 1 year (usually 10–28 weeks), led to cancer induction are summarized in Table 2. The details are described below.

Table 2. Short-term studies of the effects of concurrent administration of nitrite and amines/amides on cancer

NC	NC concentration		Nitrite concentration		Strain, number per sex	Exposure duration (weeks)	Results
	DW (mg/L)	Feed (mg/kg)	DW (mg/L)	Feed (mg/kg)			
Rats							
AMP	0, 250, 1000		0, 250, 1000		SD, F and M	30–50	Liver malignant tumours[A]
DSF		0, 1000		0, 2000	F344, 20/sex	78	Oesophagus, tongue, squamous stomach and nasal cavity tumours[B]
HMI	0, 2000		0, 2000		SD, 15/sex	28	Gastroesophageal, tongue, oropharynx, lung and nasal cavity tumours[A, C]
Mice							
DMA		5900	1000		Sw, 20–40/sex	28	No tumour[D]
EU			0, 1000		Sw, 31–144 A	28	Lung adenomas[E]
MAni		1950	1000		Sw, 20–40/sex	28	Lung adenomas[D]
Mor		0, 6250, 6330	500–2000		Sw, 20–40/sex	10–28	Lung adenoma[D, F]
MU		0, 2680, 5360	500–2000		Sw, 31–144 A	10–28	Lung tumours[E, F]
Pip		690–18 750	50–2000		Strain A, 40 M	20–25	Liver tumours[G]
Pip		0–6330	500–2000		Sw, 20–40/sex	10–28	Lung tumours[D, F]

Abbreviations: A, animals; AMP, aminopyrine; DMA, dimethylamine hydrochloride; DSF, disulfiram; DW, drinking water; EU, ethylurea; F, female; HMI, heptamethyleneimine; M, male; MAni, methylaniline; MU, methylurea; Mor, morpholine; NC, nitrosatable compound; Pip, piperazine; SD, Sprague-Dawley; Sw, Swiss.

References: A, Lijinsky et al. (1973b); B, Greenblatt et al. (1971); C, Lijinsky and Reuber (1980); D, Mirvish et al. (1972); E, Taylor and Lijinsky (1975); F, Mirvish et al. (1975); G, Greenblatt et al. (1973).

2-Acetyl aminofluorene (AAF) is one of the most intensively used model compounds in studying the metabolism and carcinogenesis of arylamides and amines. In a long-term study, Hsu et al. (1997) investigated the effect of sodium nitrite on the tumorigenicity of AAF in Wistar rats fed with AAF and sodium nitrite for 12 weeks. Rats were divided into five groups: group I served as control; group II was treated with 0.3% sodium nitrite; group III was given 0.02% AAF alone; and groups IV and V received both AAF and sodium nitrite (0.2% and 0.3%, respectively) in their diet. At the end of the experiment, all rats in groups III, IV and V developed early-stage phenomena of hepatocellular carcinoma, including hepatomegaly with variable-sized foci and neoplastic nodules. Severe damage was observed in the rats treated with AAF and sodium nitrite. Feeding of AAF for 3 months elevated the levels of c-Fos, c-Jun and c-Myc proteins in the rat livers; these elevations were significantly magnified ($P < 0.001$) by sodium nitrite.

The effect of ingestion of seafood—specifically, the popular squid that contains high levels of naturally occurring amines, such as DMA, trimethylamine (TMA) and trimethylamine-N-oxide (TMAO)—on cancer induction was also investigated. Rats fed 10% squid (corresponding to 0.19% DMA) with or without 0.3% sodium nitrite for 10 months became languorous and showed marked reduced body and liver weights. At the end of this experiment, a significant elevation of serum levels of the liver enzyme gamma-glutamate transferase was observed in groups co-administered sodium nitrite and a nitrosatable species (squid or pure DMA), with or without vitamin C ($0.01 < P < 0.02$). Two of 12 (16%) rats fed 10% squid alone developed liver cancer. Simultaneous feeding of 10% squid and 0.3% sodium nitrite elevated the incidence of liver cancer to 33% (4/12); splenomegaly was also observed. Adding 0.3% vitamin C to rat feed reduced cancer incidence to 18% (2/11). However, 0.19% DMA given alone or co-administered with sodium nitrite did not induce tumours in rats. The authors concluded that some components of squid other than DMA might be involved in the process of carcinogenesis. Indeed, further tests revealed that in addition to DMA (0.19–0.2%), squid purchased from various sources in this experiment contained extraordinarily high concentrations of TMAO (4%), which can also interact *in vivo* to form the carcinogenic NDMA (Lin and Ho, 1992).

Ethylenethiourea (ETU) is a principal impurity as well as a degradation and metabolic product of ethylene bisdithiocarbamate fungicides used for global treatment of vegetables, crops and fruits. To investigate its biotransformation in the stomach and the resultant increase in tumour occurrence, Yoshida et al. (1993) gave 10 weekly oral administrations of concurrent doses of ETU (25, 50 and 100 mg/kg bw) and sodium nitrite (17.5, 35 and 70 mg/kg bw) by gavage to ICR mice (30 of each sex per group), which were then allowed to live without treatment for up to 18 months after the first administration. Afterwards, they studied tumorigenicity of selected target tissues. These treatments caused earlier development of tumours or dose-dependent increases in the incidences of tumours in the lymphatic tissue, lung, forestomach, Harderian gland and uterus, whereas treatment with either ETU or sodium nitrite alone failed to show carcinogenic activity.

In their quantitative study, Greenblatt and Mirvish (1973) found that the number of lung adenomas per mouse was approximately proportional to the concentration of piperazine in food and the square of the drinking water nitrite concentration. Thus, in this study, the tumorigenic effect was very dependent on dose; for example, if the dose of both reactants was lowered 10 times, mononitrosopiperazine production should drop 1000 times.

However, the effect of the concurrent administration of nitrite with amino acids to rats and mice (Garcia and Lijinsky, 1973; Greenblatt et al., 1973) or with trimethylamine to rats (Mirvish, 1975b; Mirvish et al., 1975) was not significant.

In all of the above studies, feeding experimental animals with nitrite, amines or amides alone did not induce tumours.

9.2.4.2 Long-term exposure leading to cancer

Some of the studies reviewed are summarized in Table 3.

Table 3. Long-term studies of the effects of concurrent administration of nitrite and amines/amides on cancer

NC	NC concentration		Nitrite concentration		Species, strain, sex	Exposure duration	Results
	DW	Feed	DW	Feed			
Synthetic compounds							
Aln, CPM, DPH		0.2 g/L		0.2 g/L	F344 rats, 20–24 M	Lifetime	Liver neoplasms (hepatocellular carcinomas and neoplastic nodules)[A]
DDAO	2 g/L		2 g/L				
BHPA		10 000 mg/kg	0, 1500, 3000 mg/L		Wistar rats, 20 M	Lifetime	Nasal cavity, lung, oesophagus, liver and bladder tumours[B]
Cim					B6CF$_1$[a] mice, 40–80 M	Lifetime	Lung and haematopoietic system[C]
DEA	0, 2000, 4000 mg/L		0, 400, 800 mg/L		Guinea pigs, 20 M	2.5 years	No tumours[D]
EU, MU	0.01%, 0.03%			0.3%	SD rats, 10/sex	2 years	Neurogenic and lymphoid neoplasms[E]
Mor		1000 mg/kg		1000 mg/kg	SD rats, 94–172/sex	125 weeks	Hepatocellular carcinoma[F]
Mor	0, 3000 mg/L		0, 3000 mg/L		Wistar rats, 40 M	2 years	Liver tumours[G]
Mor		10 000 mg/kg	2 g/L		Wistar rats, 40 M	Lifetime	Hepatocellular carcinoma[H]
Mor		1000 mg/kg		1000 mg/kg	SG hamsters, 24–55/sex	110 weeks	Liver carcinomas[F]
Food extracts							
Fish		8%, 32%, 64%		0.12%	F344 rats, 50/sex	104 weeks	Adenomas and renal cell carcinomas in dose-dependent manner[I]
Meat		40%		200, 5000 mg/kg	Wistar rats, 30/sex	Lifetime	No tumours[J]
Meat		45%		200–4000 mg/kg			No tumours[K]

Abbreviations: Aln, allantoin; BHPA, bis(2-hydroxypropyl)amine; CPM, chlorpheniramine maleate; Cim, cimetidine; DDAO, *N,N*-dimethyldodecylamine-*N*-oxide; DEA, diethylamine; DPH, diphenhydramine hydrochloride; DW, drinking water; EU, ethylurea; M, male; MU, methylurea; Mor, morpholine; NC, nitrosatable compound; SD, Sprague-Dawley; SG, Syrian Golden.
[a] A cross between female C57BL/6 and male BALB/c mice.
References: A, Lijinsky (1984); B, Yamamoto et al. (1989); C, Anderson et al. (1985); D, Sen et al. (1975); E, Koestner and Denlinger (1975); F, Shank and Newberne (1976); G, Mirvish et al. (1976); H, Mirvish et al. (1983); I, Furukawa et al. (2000); J, van Logten et al. (1972); K, Olsen et al. (1984).

9.2.4.3 Studies on interactions with antioxidants
Some studies demonstrated that tumour incidence is lowered by certain dietary substances, such as vitamin C (Mirvish et al., 1975, 1976, 1983; Chan and Fong, 1977; Mokhtar et al., 1988), gallic acid (Mirvish et al., 1975), soya bean (Mokhtar et al., 1988) or tea extract (Xu and Chi, 1990). The capacity of these various substances to reduce tumours would depend on factors such as the administered dose, the time of administration (null efficiency if the NOC is already formed), as well as the presence of other substances during administration.

9.2.4.4 Conclusion
In most of the foregoing studies, unrealistically high doses of nitrite and amines or amides were used, which bears little resemblance to normal human exposure conditions (Lijinsky, 1984; Bartsch et al., 1988); few investigations have been carried out using low doses (Mirvish, 1975b). In addition, the results indicate that the target organ of tumours depends not only on the species and strain of the test animal, but also on the nature of the studied nitrosatable compound and probably on its dose. Furthermore, one of the most important features regarding combined exposure of nitrite and nitrosatable compounds is the wide spectrum of target organs (Tables 1 and 2).
The results of these studies are suggestive of a role for endogenous nitrosation in tumorigenesis, because the authors sometimes noted that the tumours observed were characteristically similar to those induced by the nitroso derivatives of the nitrosatable compounds tested (Yamamoto et al., 1989).

9.2.5 Genotoxicity of the concurrent administration of nitrite and nitrosatable compounds
9.2.5.1 In vivo
Concurrently administered nitrite and nitrosatable compounds were shown to be mutagenic, inducing genetic modifications either by reduction of DNA synthesis or by methylation of nucleic acids (Montesano and Magee, 1971; Friedman and Staub, 1976).
After gavage administration of [^{14}C]methylurea plus nitrite to rats, 7-[^{14}C]methylguanine was detected in the nucleic acids of the stomach, intestine and liver, which was attributed to [^{14}C]methylnitrosourea formation (Montesano and Magee, 1971). Likewise, after gavage administration of DMA plus nitrite to mice, 7-methylation of guanine (7-[^{14}C]methylguanine) and an inhibition of ribonucleic acid (RNA) and protein synthesis were observed in the liver and attributed to NDMA formation (Friedman et al., 1972). Gombar et al. (1983) were also able to detect 7-[^{14}C]methylguanine in urine of male Wistar rats gavaged with very low doses of [^{14}C]aminopyrine and sodium nitrite: 0.3 and 0.053 mg/kg bw (equivalent to 0.035 mg NO_2^-/kg bw), respectively.
Friedman and Staub (1976) evaluated the mutagenic action of combined oral administration of methylurea (2000 mg/kg bw) and sodium nitrite (0, 100 or 150 mg/kg bw,

equivalent to 0, 67 or 100 mg NO_2^-/kg bw) in drinking water through the uptake of [³H]thymidine into testicular DNA of male Swiss mice (testicular DNA synthesis). DNA synthesis was quantified 3.5 hours after drug administration as uptake into DNA of a 30-minute pulse of 0.37 MBq of [³H]thymidine. Combinations of methylurea at 2000 mg/kg bw and sodium nitrite at 150 mg/kg bw (equivalent to 100 mg NO_2^-/kg bw) administered orally to male Swiss mice (four per group) resulted in gastric synthesis of nitrosomethylurea and inhibited testicular DNA synthesis by 83%. Combinations of methylurea at 1000 mg/kg bw and sodium nitrite at 100 mg/kg bw (equivalent to 67 mg NO_2^-/kg bw) inhibited DNA synthesis by 75%. With DMA and sodium nitrite, a combination that results in gastric synthesis of NDMA, inhibitions of 65% and 57% were observed with DMA at 2000 mg/kg bw together with sodium nitrite at 150 mg/kg bw (equivalent to 100 mg NO_2^-/kg bw) and with DMA at 1000 mg/kg bw in combination with sodium nitrite at 100 mg/kg bw (equivalent to 67 mg NO_2^-/kg bw), respectively. In separate experiments, NDMA (50 mg/kg bw, orally) and *N*-nitrosodiethylamine (100 mg/kg bw, intraperitoneally) inhibited thymidine uptake by 30% and 89%, respectively.

Unscheduled DNA synthesis (UDS) was significantly increased in leukocytes from six of 10 subjects after a variety of meals consisting of cured meat or fish and vegetables (containing varying amounts of nitrate, nitrite and nitrosamines), although no correlation could be found with dietary nitrate, nitrite or nitrosamine levels or with blood nitrosamine levels (Kowalski et al., 1980). In another study, Miller (1984) found that ingested nitrite (from salad) had no effect on the level of UDS in circulating leukocytes after consumption of an amine-containing meal by human subjects (10 males, 10 females). It was concluded from their study that although the UDS sometimes observed after a meal may be associated with DNA damage induced by NOCs formed *in vivo*, dietary nitrite *per se* is not directly implicated.

9.2.5.2 In vitro

In intra-sanguineous host-mediated assays with mice, combined administration of nitrite and DMA, morpholine or aminopyrine induced mutagenic activity in the test organisms *Salmonella typhimurium* in the case of DMA and morpholine and *Schizosaccharomyces pombe* in the case of aminopyrine (Edwards et al., 1979; Whong and Ong, 1979; Whong et al., 1979; Barale et al., 1981).

Inui et al. (1978, 1980) treated Syrian hamsters with various doses of sodium nitrite and morpholine or amidopyrine in utero by its oral administration to the mothers. Gene mutations, as evidenced by micronucleus formation and morphological or malignant transformation of the cells, were found in cultured embryonic cells, most probably due to transplacental activity of the nitrosamines endogenously formed in the mothers. There was no increase in chromosomal aberrations.

Gatehouse and Tweats (1982) conducted the nitrosation assay procedure test by adding 40 mmol sodium nitrite per litre to normal fasting human gastric juice from healthy untreated volunteers. The data clearly demonstrate that such treatment results in the formation of derivatives with specific mutagenic activity for *S. typhimurium* TA1537 (the strain recommended for use in the nitrosation assay procedure test), but not for *S. typhimurium* TA1535 or TA98. Such activity may have resulted from the nitrosation of phenols, carbazoles and indoles, which occur naturally in gastric juice. However, the formation of detectable levels of mutagenic species within fasting gastric juice in the present experiments was manifest only at nitrite concentrations that were in excess of 2000 times those normally expected *in vivo* and 300 times those obtained after a nitrite-rich meal.

Treatment of some food products (fish, beans, borscht) with sodium nitrite (1000 and 5000 mg/kg, equivalent to 667 and 3334 mg NO_2^-/kg) at pH 3.0 led to the development of mutagenic activity in *S. typhimurium* in the presence and absence of a metabolic activation system. Mutagenic activities of nitrosation products of Japanese foodstuffs (after treatment with nitrite at pH 4.2) were also detected in *S. typhimurium*, with and without metabolic activation (Marquardt et al., 1977; Weisburger et al., 1980).

The potential of amine-containing drugs to yield mutagenic NOCs through nitrosation has received considerable attention in the scientific press. Indeed, most NOCs formed by nitrosatable drugs gave a positive response in one or more short-term genotoxicity assays (Brambilla and Martelli, 2005, 2007). Andrews et al. (1980) showed that nitrosation products of several drugs (by treatment with sodium nitrite in acid medium) possessed mutagenic activity in a bacterial assay with *S. typhimurium*. In a review, Brambilla (1985) noted that nitrosation products of several drugs (after treatment with nitrite in acidic medium) caused DNA fragmentation in Chinese hamster ovary cells *in vitro*.

In an extensive review, Brambilla and Martelli (2007) found that 173 of 182 (95%) drugs examined in various experimental conditions for their ability to react with nitrite formed NOCs or other reactive species. Moreover, 112 of 136 (82.4%) drugs examined in short-term genotoxicity tests or in long-term carcinogenesis assays, either in combination with nitrite or using their nitrosation product, to establish whether they produce genotoxic and carcinogenic effects were found to give at least one positive response. For the *N*-nitroso derivatives of 26 drugs, it was possible to calculate the corresponding genotoxic potencies from the results of studies on their ability to induce DNA fragmentation in cultured Chinese hamster ovary cells or in primary cultures of rats and human hepatocytes. The estimated DNA-damaging potencies reported in this review indicated that 12 of 23 drugs (52%) form NOCs that are more potent than methylnitrosourea in damaging the DNA of Chinese hamster ovary cells, and six of eight drugs (75%) form NOCs that are more potent than NDMA in damaging the DNA of primary rat hepatocytes. Thus, it is evident that, at least in the assays considered, the NOCs formed by some drugs are characterized by a genotoxic potency higher than those of NOCs that have been classified by IARC (1987) as probably carcinogenic to humans (i.e., NDMA, *N*-nitrosodiethylamine and methylnitrosourea.

9.2.6   Genotoxicity of nitrate and nitrite

The mutagenicity and genotoxicity of nitrate and nitrite have been extensively reviewed in other work (IARC, 2010). In general, results are mixed for nitrate, but evidence for the genotoxicity of nitrite is mostly positive.

9.2.6.1 In vivo
Nitrate

Examination of embryonic cells from Syrian golden hamsters for micronucleus formation, chromosomal aberrations, morphological/malignant cell transformation and drug-resistant mutation did not reveal any abnormalities (Tsuda et al., 1976). Sodium nitrate given to mice by gastric intubation yielded negative results for UDS in early to mid-spermatids and did not appear to produce any sperm abnormality (Alavantić et al., 1988).

Conversely, when rats were treated intragastrically with sodium nitrate, increases in the frequency of chromosomal aberrations in bone marrow were reported. These results were weaker in mice (Alavantić et al., 1988).

Nitrite

Morphological transformation of hamster embryonic cells *in utero* was reported following exposure to nitrite (Inui et al., 1979). Negative results were obtained for rats orally exposed to sodium nitrite when the pyloric mucosa was examined for single-strand breaks or unscheduled DNA synthesis. However, it should be noted that sperm head abnormality was detected after treatment (Alavantić et al., 1988; Ohshima et al., 1989).

Positive results were reported for chromosomal aberration in rat, mouse and chinchilla bone marrow cells following nitrite exposure (El Nahas et al., 1984; Luca et al., 1987; Alavantić, 1988; Ohshima et al., 1989) and in liver cells from embryos after exposure of pregnant rats (El Nahas et al., 1984). Contrarily, negative results were reported for chromosomal aberrations following *in utero* exposure in the hamster (Inui et al., 1979).

9.2.6.2 In vitro
Nitrate

Tests for the mutagenicity of sodium and potassium nitrate using the Ames assay were negative in *S. typhimurium* (Ishidate et al., 1984).

Tests for chromosomal aberrations were mixed for sodium nitrate, as it did not induce single strand breaks in the DNA of Chinese hamster V79 cells (Gorsdorf et al., 1990), but positive results were obtained in Chinese hamster fibroblasts (Ishidate et al., 1984). It should, however, be noted that potassium nitrate (and sodium chloride) gave negative results in the same study, suggesting that the observed effects were due to changes in osmolarity (IARC 2010).

Nitrite

Both sodium and potassium nitrite yielded positive results for the Ames test in various strains of *S. typhimurium* (Ishidate et al., 1984; Brams et al., 1987; Prival et al., 1991; Zeiger et al., 1992; Balimandawa et al., 1994). Sodium nitrite also gave weakly positive results in the umu test (Nakamura et al., 1987). Positive results were reported for this compound in the SOS chromotest (IARC, 2010).

Although DNA single-strand breaks were not observed in cultured cells (mouse mammary carcinoma or Chinese hamster V79) treated with sodium nitrite, sodium nitrite did induce chromosomal abnormalities in a number of cell lines in different species, including Chinese hamster V79 cells, Chinese hamster fibroblasts, C3H mouse mammary carcinoma cells, Syrian hamster embryo cells and African green monkey foetal liver cells (Kodama et al., 1976; Tsuda and Kato, 1977; Ishidate et al., 1984; Budayová, 1985; Luca et al., 1987). Sodium nitrite also induced 6-thioguanine-resistant and 8-azaguanine-resistant mutants in V79 hamster cells and mouse mammary carcinoma cells, respectively (Tsuda et al., 1976; Tsuda and Hasegawa, 1990). Positive tests were reported for aneuploidy in Syrian hamster embryo cells (Tsuda et al., 1976).

9.2.7 Reproductive and developmental toxicity
9.2.7.1 Reproductive effects

No treatment-related effects on parameters of fertility were observed in pair-based animal studies of sodium nitrite and potassium nitrate, although no studies were conducted under a standard multigenerational reproductive study protocol. These studies evaluated mated-pair exposure to nitrate/nitrite prior to mating through to weaning in CD-1 mice (sodium nitrite in drinking water at 0, 125, 260 and 425 mg/kg bw/day, equivalent to 0, 83.4, 173.4 or 283.5 mg

NO$_2^-$/kg bw/day; NTP, 1990); CD-1 mice and Sprague-Dawley rats (mixture of 1×, 10× and 100× the median concentration of ammonium nitrate determined in ground water surveys; Heindel et al., 1994); C57BL/6 mice (sodium nitrite in drinking water at 0, 30.7 or 310 mg/kg bw/day, equivalent to 0, 20.5, 206.8 mg NO$_2^-$/kg bw/day; Anderson et al., 1985); SD rats (sodium nitrite in diet at 0%, 0.0125%, 0.025% or 0.05% w/w; Vorhees et al., 1984); and Wistar rats (sodium nitrite in diet at 0, 5, 25 or 100 mg/kg bw, equivalent to 0, 3.3, 16.7 or 66.7 mg NO$_2^-$/kg bw/day; Olsen et al., 1984). Parameters examined in these studies included mean number of litters per pair, days to deliver litter, mean litter size, pup viability, post-delivery estrous cycle, gestation length, sex ratio of offspring, external malformations, timing of vaginal opening in female offspring, mean pup weight and pup survival.

However, the estrous cycles of female mice was significantly longer in mice exposed to sodium nitrite at 1500 and 5000 mg/L (equivalent to 1000 and 3334 mg NO$_2^-$/L) but was not altered in mice exposed to 375 or 750 mg sodium nitrite/L (equivalent to 250 or 500 mg NO$_2^-$/L) in drinking water for 14 weeks; no significant differences in vaginal cytology parameters after 14 weeks of exposure and no notable histopathological changes in reproductive organs after 2 years of exposure were reported (NTP, 2001).

At high levels of sodium nitrite and sodium nitrate exposure, there was evidence for and against testicular degeneration and reduced sperm motility in male rats and mice. Significantly reduced sperm motility was observed in male rats and mice exposed to sodium nitrite at 5000 mg/L (3334 mg nitrite/L) and testicular degeneration in male mice exposed to sodium nitrite at 3000 or 5000 mg/L (2000 or 3334 mg NO$_2^-$/L) in drinking water for 14 weeks; no notable histopathological changes in reproductive organs were reported in either species exposed for 2 years in drinking water (NTP, 2001). Sperm count and motility as well as activity of enzymatic markers of spermatogenesis were significantly decreased after male Swiss albino rats (*n* = 6 per group) were exposed orally to sodium nitrate at 50, 100 or 200 mg/kg bw/day (equivalent to 36.45, 72.9 or 145.8 mg NO$_3^-$/kg bw/day) for 60 days, compared with controls; decreased testicular weight and histopathological changes were significant only at the two highest doses (Aly et al., 2010). Decreased sperm count and motility in mice exposed to potassium nitrate at 225–270 mg/kg bw/day (equivalent to 138-165.8 mg NO$_3^-$/kg bw/day) for 35 days have also been reported, with no effects at 175–210 mg/kg bw/day (equivalent to 107.45-128.9 mg NO$_3^-$/kg bw/day) in testis, epididymal or accessory organ weight (Pant and Srivastava, 2002). Grant and Butler (1989) reported testicular cell hyperplasia to increase with sodium nitrite dose (0.2% or 0.5% w/w; 50–F344 rats per dose) compared with controls (*n* = 20) after 115 weeks of exposure in diet; however, results were not statistically significant and the authors suggested that the results were confounded by hormonal imbalances in the geriatric rats.

9.2.7.2 Developmental effects

In utero exposure of mice to sodium nitrite at doses ranging from 20 to 243 mg/kg bw/day (equivalent to 13.3 to 162 mg NO$_2^-$/kg bw/day) did not provide clear or consistent evidence of adverse effects on measures of foetal viability, weight, sex ratio or frequency of external or internal malformations (Globus and Samuel, 1978; Shimada, 1989). Significant changes in hepatic erythropoiesis were observed, but no sustained alterations of mature red blood cells were evident; hence, the functional consequences of these findings are unclear (Globus and Samuel, 1978). All three studies covered a major part of organogenesis (gestation days 6–18) and used oral exposure (gavage or drinking water).

In utero exposure of guinea pigs to sodium nitrite at 45, 50, 60 or 70 mg/kg bw (equivalent to 30, 33.3, 40, 46.7 mg NO_2^-/kg bw) by subcutaneous injection resulted in spontaneous abortion of litters; co-administration of methylene blue, a methaemoglobin antagonist, had a protective effect on foetuses (Kociba and Sleight, 1970; Sinha and Sleight, 1971). In addition, neither sodium nitrite (45 or 50 mg/kg) in the presence of ascorbic acid nor ascorbic acid deficiency alone was associated with excess abortions; however, together they resulted in 83% mortality (Kociba and Sleight, 1970). No gross abnormalities were noted in any living or aborted fetuses. Prenatal exposure to 300 to 10,000 mg potassium nitrite/L (equivalent to 162 to 5,410 mg NO_2^-/L) in maternal drinking water resulted in 3 to 100% foetal loss at all doses, which increased with increasing dose compared with controls (Sleight and Atallah, 1968).

In a series of studies in which pregnant rats were exposed to sodium nitrite in drinking water at 2000 mg/L (equivalent to 1334 mg NO_2^-/L) from gestation day 13 through to birth, alterations of neurobehavioural parameters were found (Nyakas et al., 1990, 1994a, 1994b). Affected parameters included impaired discriminate learning and long-term retention of passive avoidance, open field activity, hyper-reactivity to foot shock, prolonged stress response and ingrowth of nerve fibres; effects were prevented or alleviated by nimodipine (neuroprotective, antihypoxic) administration. In other studies in which sodium nitrite was administered to pregnant and lactating rats, no effects on birth weight were observed, but a lower mean litter size was reported after pregnant rats were exposed to sodium nitrite in drinking water at 2000 or 3000 mg/L (equivalent to 1334 or 2000 mg NO_2^-/L); however, no statistics were provided (Shuval and Gruener, 1972). Prenatal and postnatal exposure to sodium nitrite in drinking water at concentrations of 0, 0.5, 1.0, 2.0 or 3.0 g/L (equivalent to 0, 0.22, 0.67, 1.33 or 2 g NO_2^-/L) had no effects on prenatal pup weight, but there were reports of adverse effects on postnatal pup growth, increased mortality and decreased haematological parameters (haemoglobin content, red blood cell counts and maximum corpuscular volume values) (Roth et al., 1987; Roth and Smith, 1988). The authors suggested that these adverse effects resulted from severe iron deficiency, which can be mitigated or eliminated by iron supplementation (Roth and Smith, 1988). No adverse effects on pup weights, increase in morphological malformations or increased mortality was observed in rats fed 0, 6, 47 or 580 mg sodium nitrite (equivalent to 0, 4, 31, 387 mg NO_2^-) per kg of meat in diet (Olsen et al., 1984). In addition, no external malformations or post-weaning pup mortality was observed after rats were fed sodium nitrite (0%, 0.0125%, 0.025% or 0.05% w/w) 14 days prior to mating through to lactation; however, treatment was associated with increases in pre-weaning pup mortality and decreases in open-field locomotor activity at the highest dose (Vorhees et al., 1984).

An early review of experimental animal studies (Fan et al., 1987) did not find evidence of teratogenic effects attributable to nitrate or nitrite ingestion. Adverse reproductive and developmental effects occurred at doses that were estimated to be 1000 times greater than the estimated human intake. The effects of sodium and potassium nitrate and nitrite were tested in rats, mice, rabbits, guinea pigs and hamsters. In a review of animal studies, Manassaram et al. (2006) concluded that adverse reproductive and development effects result from high doses of nitrate or nitrite.

9.3   Endogenous formation of *N*-nitroso compounds

Nitrosating agents (NAs; N_xO_y form) can react under certain conditions with nitrosatable compounds (NCs) to form *N*-nitrosamines and *N*-nitrosamides (hereafter nitrosamines and nitrosamides), collectively called *N*-nitroso compounds (NOCs):

$$NAs + NCs \rightarrow NOCs$$

This reaction is called *N*-nitrosation or simply nitrosation. Human beings are exposed to various types of nitrosating agents through diet, drinking water and tobacco smoke. These substances can also be synthesised endogenously from ingested nitrate and nitrite (Bartsch et al., 1988; Brambilla and Martelli, 2005).

For about 300 NOCs tested for carcinogenicity, 85% of the 209 nitrosamines and 92% of the 86 nitrosamides assayed have been shown to induce cancer (Montesano and Bartsch, 1976). In various studies with different NOCs, carcinogenicity has been demonstrated in 36 different species of fish, reptiles, birds and mammals, including five species of primate (Montesano and Bartsch, 1976; Gangolli et al., 1994; Brown, 1999; Vermeer and Van Maanen, 2001). In rodents, nitrosamines principally induce tumours of the liver, kidney, oesophagus, oral and nasal cavities, lung, trachea, urinary bladder, pancreas and thyroid, whereas nitrosamides induce tumours of the lymphatic (acute myelocytic leukaemia and T and B cell lymphoma) and nervous systems (when given orally), glandular stomach, small intestine, bone and skin (Mirvish, 1991, 1995). NOCs therefore constitute a versatile class of carcinogens (NAS, 1981; Shephard et al., 1987; Bartsch et al., 1988), as no other carcinogen group induces such a wide variety of tumours (Mirvish, 1995).

As reviewed by Mirvish (1975b) and Shephard et al. (1987), nitrosamines can be formed from different amino compounds, including secondary amines (dialkyl, alkylaryl, diaryl or cyclic secondary amines), and nitrosamides can be formed from secondary and tertiary amides (*N*-substituted ureas, *N*-alkylureas, *N*-alkylcarbamates, urethanes and simple *N*-alkylamides). In the nitrosation reaction, all these amino compounds act as nitrosatable compounds.

Secondary amines are major substrates for NOC, as they occur abundantly in food. Fish, for example, contain relatively large amounts of the secondary amine DMA. Like TMA, DMA is a common degradation product of TMAO, an end product of nitrogen metabolism in fish (Zeisel et al., 1985). Secondary amines can also form in the stomach following the digestion of alkylamine-containing foods such as meat or other protein (Addiscott and Benjamin, 2004). Moreover, as is the case for tertiary amines, several secondary amines are used as drugs and pesticides.

Tertiary amines may also undergo nitrosation in mildly acidic conditions such as those prevailing in the mammalian stomach during digestion of a meal (Mirvish, 1975b; Lijinsky and Reuber, 1980; Lijinsky, 1984; Bartsch et al., 1988). Mirvish (1975b) has indicated that this *in vivo* nitrosation of simple tertiary amines will probably not prove to be important biologically, as their reaction rate is usually lower. Nevertheless, in terms of quantity alone, they could still represent a significant source of nitrosamines, because many drugs are tertiary amines (Lijinsky and Reuber, 1980). Consequently, tertiary amines are of special interest.

Nitrosation of ureas and carbamates may also be important, as many of these compounds are used as drugs and as insecticides (Mirvish, 1975b).

Certain primary amines, such as tyramine (found in cheese), have also been reported to undergo reaction with nitrite to yield diazo compounds, which have been shown to be mutagenic and carcinogenic (Bartsch et al., 1988).

Other possible nitrosatable compounds, and sources of NOCs, are amidines, cyanamides, guanidines, hydroxylamines, hydrazines, hydrazones and hydrazides (Crespi and Ramazzotti, 1991).

Amino compounds that may interact with nitrosating agents to form NOCs are found ubiquitously in the human environment. Foods, drugs, cosmetics, pesticides and tobacco products are all significant sources of nitrosatable amino compounds (Kamm et al., 1975; Montesano and Bartsch, 1976; Brambilla and Martelli, 2005). In addition to exogenous sources, some nitrosatable species (e.g., DMA, piperidine, pyrrolidine) are synthesized in the body (Montesano and Bartsch, 1976; Tannenbaum et al., 1991). Humans are therefore ubiquitously exposed (exogenously and endogenously) to a variety of amino-containing compounds, which can potentially react with nitrosating agents to give NOCs (Shephard et al., 1987; Bartsch et al., 1988).

People can be exposed either to (exogenous) preformed NOCs or to endogenous NOCs (via endogenous nitrosation) (Crespi and Ramazzotti, 1991). Human exposure to preformed NOCs usually occurs through diet (preserved meats and fish, beer), certain occupational settings and the use of consumer and tobacco products (Brambilla and Martelli, 2005; Ward et al., 2005a). Preformed NOC is not covered in this document.

Endogenous nitrosation may occur through several mechanisms, including acid-catalysed (particularly in the acidic stomach) and cell-mediated (bacteria and immune cell; at neutral pH) formation (Ohshima and Bartsch, 1994; Mirvish, 1995; IARC, 2010).

Thus, NOC formation can take place under several conditions in food products or within the body. However, only endogenous nitrosation, by reaction of nitrite with nitrosatable compounds, is discussed in the present document.

9.3.1 Chemistry of endogenous N-nitrosation

Although the relative contribution of endogenous nitrosation (acid-catalysed and cell-mediated) to total exposure to NOCs is still not clear, the endogenous synthesis of NOCs was suggested as the largest source of exposure to NOCs for the general population (Shephard et al., 1987; Bartsch et al., 1988; Crespi and Ramazzotti, 1991; NRC, 1995; Fristachi and Rice, 2007). Two mechanisms of endogenous nitrosation account for an estimated 40–75% of the total human exposure to NOCs, even though most of the factors involved have not yet been well characterized (Crespi and Ramazzotti, 1991; Tricker, 1997; Jakszyn et al., 2006).

9.3.1.1 Acid-catalysed nitrosation

The chemistry of NOC formation has been extensively studied, and a number of reviews have been published (Mirvish, 1975b; Shephard et al., 1987; Bartsch et al., 1988). It has been suggested that interaction of nitrosatable compounds (also called nitrosatable precursors) with nitrite in the human stomach could give rise to carcinogenic NOCs, formation of which could increase the risk of cancer (Lijinsky, 1984).

For nitrosation to occur in healthy humans, nitrite swallowed with saliva is usually first converted to nitrous acid (HNO_2, pK_a 3.37) under acidic conditions in the stomach (Mirvish, 1975b; Brambilla and Martelli, 2007). Therefore, acid-catalysed nitrosation in the stomach, which is a non-enzymatic reaction, has generally been considered to be the most important route for endogenous formation of NOCs (Leaf et al., 1989).

Nitrous acid is unstable and spontaneously converted to the active nitrosating species nitrous anhydride (N_2O_3). Nitrous anhydride, formed from two molecules of nitrous acid, is a powerful nitrosating agent capable of donating NO^+ to secondary and tertiary amines to form nitrosamines (Mirvish, 1975b; Leaf et al., 1989). This subsequent nitrosation reaction occurs especially rapidly with weakly basic secondary amines (e.g., morpholine, piperazine, *N*-methylaniline; Mirvish, 1975b).

Certain nitrosatable compounds (e.g., amides, guanidines, carbamates, alkylureas, ureas) are too unreactive to be readily nitrosated by nitrous anhydride. Alternatively, nitrous acid can be protonated to nitrous acidium ion ($H_2NO_2^+$, protonated nitrous acid), which reacts directly with the neutral amides to form nitrosamides. Usually these reactions are quite slow at pH greater than 3 but become progressively faster with increasing acidity (Mirvish, 1975b). For most amides, the reaction rate increases about 10-fold for each 1-unit drop in pH from 3 to 1. The rate of nitrosamide formation is then proportional to the concentrations of amide and $H_2NO_2^+$, the latter being proportional to nitrite concentrations (Mirvish, 1975b).

In addition to intragastric pH (i.e., acidification in the stomach), nitrosation is also modified by the presence of catalysts (Bartsch et al., 1988). Catalysts include bacterial enzymes and several nucleophilic anions (thiocyanates [SCN] and halides) (Crespi and Ramazzotti, 1991). The reaction of amines with nitrous anhydride can be considered as a nucleophilic attack by the amine on the nitrosyl nitrogen of nitrous anhydride. Several species, such as NO-SCN, NO-Cl, NO-I and NO-Br, are similarly reactive towards amines and consequently act as catalysts when present in the reaction system (Mirvish, 1975b; Leaf et al., 1989). Thus, thiocyanate- and halide-catalysed nitrosation of amines will in general compete favourably with the nitrous anhydride mechanism (Mirvish, 1975b).

The results of *in vitro* studies show that the catalysis order is SCN > I > Br > Cl > phosphate or carboxylate. Most of these catalysts (SCN^-, I^-, Cl^-) are present in some physiological fluids (e.g., saliva, gastric juice) and are therefore biologically relevant with respect to endogenous nitrosation reactions (Mirvish, 1975b, 1991; Leaf et al., 1989; Addiscott and Benjamin, 2004). For example, thiocyanate occurs in saliva, especially that of smokers (which has a thiocyanate concentration of about 6 mmol/L), and gastric juice (thiocyanate concentration of 0.2–0.7 mmol/L) (Mirvish, 1975b; Licht and Deen, 1988; Krul et al., 2004). It is worth noting that nitrosamide formation is not catalysed by these catalysts (Licht and Deen, 1988).

It has also been reported that endogenous nitrosation can be catalysed by alcohols, aldehydes, haem and caffeine (Crespi and Ramazzotti, 1991). Caffeine increases acid secretion in the stomach, at least in humans, and hence might elevate the intragastric acid-catalysed nitrosation and enhance adenoma induction by amines plus sodium nitrite (Mirvish, 1975b). In contrast, there is evidence that haem (contained in red meat) can oxidize nitric oxide to various nitrogen oxides (hence nitrosating agents), with the subsequent formation of NOCs (Bingham et al., 1996; Cross et al., 2003; Mirvish et al., 2008). This may help to explain why colon cancer risk increased when the intakes of both nitrate in water and red meat were increased (Mirvish et al., 2008).

9.3.1.2 Cell-mediated nitrosation

It is now also recognized that other (non-gastric) pathways of endogenous nitrosation, including those catalysed by bacteria and mammalian cells, may exist. This non-gastric nitrosation may take place in many sites within the body (Brambilla and Martelli, 2005). Therefore, it is postulated that endogenous nitrosation can be stimulated by inflammatory and

other pathological or pharmacological conditions producing a rise in gastric pH and thus allowing the proliferation of nitrate-reducing bacteria (Brambilla and Martelli, 2007).

Helicobacter pylori is a known risk factor for gastric cancer that has been designated as a Group 1 carcinogen by IARC (Vermeer et al., 2002; Shiotani et al., 2004). Infection with *H. pylori* has been identified as a major cause of chronic gastritis (a condition responsible for increased gastric juice pH, hence hypochlorhydria) and intestinal metaplasia, both of which are associated with an increased risk of gastric cancer (Vermeer et al., 2002; Kodama et al., 2003). There is evidence indicating that *H. pylori* may be indirectly involved in the formation of NOCs via the above two mechanisms (bacterial and mammalian cell–mediated nitrosation). First, *H. pylori* elicits an inflammatory response that results in NOC formation via the mammalian cell–catalysed pathway. Second, *H. pylori* infection causes chronic gastritis, leading to atrophy and hypochlorhydria (hypoacidity, leading to high gastric juice nitrite levels) and subsequent deficiency in vitamin C, an inhibitor of nitrosation (Sobala et al., 1991; Vermeer et al., 2002; Shiotani et al., 2004).

9.3.2 Inhibitors of (acid-catalysed) N-nitrosation

Many naturally occurring and synthetic compounds, including polyphenols, sulphur and miscellaneous compounds, vitamins and other complex mixtures, have been shown to inhibit the nitrosation reaction in *in vitro* studies (Bartsch et al., 1989, 1990). These compounds usually compete with nitrosatable compounds for the nitrosating agents that they reduce to nitrogen or nitric oxide (reviewed by Bartsch et al., 1988; Leaf et al., 1989). However, in the presence of oxygen, anions and certain metal salts, nitric oxide is readily oxidized to the potent nitrosating species and the nitrosating capacity is restored (Bartsch et al., 1988). An extensive review by Bartsch et al. (1988) describes these compounds and their mechanisms of action as well as their capability of inhibiting the endogenous formation of NOCs in experimental animals and humans. Among these compounds are many dietary substances, including vitamins C and E, and polyphenols (Crespi and Ramazzotti, 1991).

9.3.2.1 Vitamin C (ascorbate + dehydroascorbic acid)

Among many nitrosation inhibitors, most of the attention has focused on vitamin C, which is considered to be virtually non-toxic. Vitamin C has been shown to be an effective inhibitor of acid-catalysed NOC formation, *in vivo* and *in vitro* (Brambilla and Martelli, 2007).

In vivo, ascorbate has also been shown to be one of the most effective inhibitors of intragastric nitrosation. When it was administered to animals together with nitrosating agents and a variety of secondary amines, amino acids, alkylureas and nitrosatable drugs, the formation of NOCs and their toxic, mutagenic and carcinogenic effects were significantly reduced (reviewed by Bartsch et al., 1988).

This inhibition of NOC formation depends on the reduction of nitrite to nitric oxide by vitamin C, which competes with the amine or amide for the nitrite or, to be more precise, the nitrosating agents. This explains why vitamin C is called a nitrite scavenger; this property has been attributed to its relatively rapid reaction with nitrite, as opposed to the slower rates of reaction of nitrite with secondary amines (Mackerness et al., 1989).

Given that it is water soluble, ascorbate may not be an effective inhibitor of nitrosation in lipophilic media. It has recently been demonstrated that in closed aerobic systems (e.g., stomach), nitric oxide produced from the ascorbate–nitrite reaction can migrate to the lipid phase (e.g., gastric mucosa), where it is oxidized by molecular oxygen to nitrogen dioxide, which reacts with

water to regenerate equimolar amounts of nitrous and nitric acids (Bartsch et al., 1988; Mirvish, 1991, 1994). Consequently, in the presence of lipids, vitamin C can promote nitrosation (Mirvish, 1986).

In humans, although there is evidence that ascorbate is a limiting factor in nitrosation reactions (Tannenbaum et al., 1991), this is still ambiguous, as results differ from one study to another. According to an *in vitro* theoretical model (Brambilla and Martelli, 2007) for predicting rates of nitrosamine and nitrosamide formation in the human stomach, 500 mg ascorbic acid taken with each meal might reduce the formation of nitrosamines from dietary amines by 99%, and nitrosamides formation by 74%. There is still less effect (approximately 50%) on preformed NOCs, which may be present in gastric or salivary secretions

In contrast, Kyrtopoulos et al. (1991) reported *in vivo* inhibition of only 50–63%. Thus, vitamin C seems to be an efficient inhibitor of nitrosation reactions *in vitro* (Licht and Deen, 1988), but less so when the reaction vessel is the stomach. It is worth noting that large doses (1–2 g) of the vitamin are usually used in such *in vitro* inhibition experiments. Even if we consider the daily gastric secretion of vitamin C (which amounts to about 60 mg), the minimum daily requirement of vitamin C is only 60 mg/person (range 30–90 mg; Rathbone et al., 1989). Hence, much larger intakes may be needed to prevent intragastric nitrosation (L'hirondel and L'hirondel, 2002).

9.3.2.2 *Vitamin E (tocopherol) and other compounds*
Conversely to vitamin C, which is water soluble, α-tocopherol, the principal component of vitamin E, is highly lipophilic. There is evidence that free α-tocopherol reduces nitrite to nitric oxide, as does ascorbate, and then constitutes an excellent inhibitor of nitrosation in lipids and emulsions in water (Mirvish, 1986; Bartsch et al., 1988). This means that the vitamin in its usual commercial form (i.e., the acetate) must be hydrolysed *in vivo* to free α-tocopherol by esterases in order to inhibit the endogenous nitrosation (Mirvish, 1986; Bartsch et al., 1988). Given that vitamins C and E seem to be complementary, a combination of vitamins C and E would be especially useful for inhibiting NOC formation in lipid–water mixtures such as the gastric compartment or cell membranes (Mirvish, 1986).

Other compounds, including polyphenols (catechol, gallic acid, hydroquinones, tannic acid and tannins), sulphur compounds (cysteine, glutathione, sulphur dioxide) and miscellaneous compounds (alcohol, caffeine, carbohydrates, hydrazine, hydroxylamine, urea), have been reviewed by Bartsch et al. (1988) and found to inhibit endogenous nitrosation by scavenging nitrite and nitrosating agents, as do vitamins C and E.

Inhibition has also been observed with numerous foods and beverages: complex mixtures, such as betel nut extracts, tea, coffee, fruit juices, milk and milk products, radish juice, soya products and alcoholic beverages (Bartsch et al., 1988; Brambilla and Martelli, 2007).

9.3.3 *In vitro and in vivo findings on endogenous nitrosation*
Endogenous nitrosation has been demonstrated by 1) *in vitro* incubation of precursors under simulated salivary or gastric conditions; or 2) *in vivo* determination of NOCs in body fluids and excreta after administration of precursors (Walker, 1990; Gangolli et al., 1994).

Ohshima and Bartsch (1981) described the sensitive procedure of the *N*-nitrosoproline (NPRO) test. The detection and estimation of NPRO excreted in the urine (cumulative urinary excretion in excess of any external sources) have been widely used as a quantitative measure of *in vivo* nitrosation (presumed to occur largely in the stomach), because NPRO is claimed to be safe

(i.e., non-carcinogenic) and is excreted almost entirely and virtually unchanged in (human and rat) urine (Licht and Deen, 1988; Gangolli et al., 1994; Mirvish, 1996).

Some associations were found between drinking water nitrate concentration and NPRO formation (Moller et al., 1989; Mirvish et al., 1992). Also, in most instances, higher exposures to NOCs were found in subjects at high risk of developing cancers of the stomach, oesophagus, oral cavity and urinary bladder (Bartsch et al., 1990; Gangolli et al., 1994).

Another important factor that determines endogenous nitrosation in human subjects is the timing of intakes (kinetics component of endogenous nitrosation). Mirvish et al. (1995) found that a nitrate dose yielded the most NPRO when it was given 1 hour before the meal containing proline. In that study, NPRO formation was 3–4 times higher when nitrate and proline were taken while fasting than when the proline was taken with a meal and was maximal when nitrate (500 mg) was given 1 hour before, rather than with or 2 hours before, a meal containing proline. This time of 1 hour reflects the 1–2 hours required for salivary nitrite to peak after a dose of nitrate is taken.

Ascorbate completely inhibited [^{15}N]NPRO formation from [^{15}N]nitrate in humans and ferrets, but did not affect the excretion of unlabelled NPRO (26 nmol/day), which was probably due to dietary NPRO or to *in vivo* nitrosation outside the stomach (Tannenbaum et al., 1991). In another study, volunteers were given 325 mg nitrate in drinking water 2–4 h after lunch and, 30 min later, took 550 mg proline and 1 to 6 doses of ascorbate in water. In this study, a dose of 466 mg ascorbate given 5 hours before, with, 0.5–1 hour after and 2 hours after the proline dose, reduced the NPRO excretion of 42 nmol/day in the absence of ascorbate by 44%, 77%, 39% and 0%, respectively (Mirvish, 1994).

Mirvish (1991) also reported similar results, although under somewhat different study conditions. In that experiment, volunteers ate a standard meal containing added proline 1 hour after taking nitrate. When 1 g ascorbate was given 2 hours before, with, 1 hour after or 2 hours after the test meal, net NPRO excretion was inhibited by 94%, 100%, 87% and 25%, respectively. To test whether the inhibition of *in vivo* nitrosation by vegetables/fruits is due solely to their ascorbate content, Helser et al. (1992) conducted the NPRO test, but instead of ascorbate, they gave 100 mL of vegetable or fruit juice to which ascorbate had been added, to give a total of 46 mg ascorbate. Carrot, strawberry, pineapple and green pepper juices (in increasing order of effectiveness) inhibited NPRO formation by 41–63%, compared with 24% when 46 mg ascorbate was given in 100 mL water (inhibitions are calculated after subtracting the blank NPRO). These results demonstrate that some vegetables/fruits contain compounds other than ascorbate that inhibit endogenous nitrosation. Hence, negative associations between vegetable/fruit consumption and cancer are probably not due solely to ascorbate, even if only the inhibition of NOC formation is involved. Ascorbate has also been shown to inhibit *in vivo* nitrosation due to nitric oxide (Mirvish, 1994).

The NPRO test is at best a reasonable indicator of the gastric formation of carcinogenic nitrosamines and perhaps of other NOCs (Bartsch et al., 1988; Gangolli et al., 1994). However, Licht and Deen (1988) showed that NPRO is not an accurate indicator of gastric nitrosation under physiological (low dose) conditions, even when corrections are made for dietary intake of NPRO. Therefore, NPRO studies seem useful only in suggesting trends (Licht and Deen, 1988). In fact, the NPRO test cannot accurately estimate the actual dose of NOCs, because NPRO is not metabolized, as is the case of the other NOCs; rather, it is excreted almost entirely in the urine.

Several experimental studies in humans demonstrated a direct relationship between nitrate intake and endogenous formation of NOCs. Indeed, in the context of NOC formation from normal dietary components, Vermeer et al. (1998) carried out an investigation in 25 human volunteers who ingested 3.65 mg nitrate/kg bw/day (0.84 mg/kg bw/day as nitrate-nitrogen) in drinking water or vegetables, in combination with a fish meal rich in amines as nitrosatable precursors. There was a significantly increased urinary excretion of NDMA (0.64–0.87 µg/24 h) by the human volunteers. Analyses of urine also revealed the presence of detectable amounts of *N*-piperazine and NPYR. Another study on human populations exposed to various nitrate levels in their drinking water provided further confirmatory evidence for the *in vivo* formation of NPYR (Van Maanen et al., 1998). In the two above studies, there was a significant correlation between 24-hour urinary excretion of volatile nitrosamines (NDMA and NPYR) and 24-hour urinary nitrate excretion ($P = 0.02$) (Van Maanen et al., 1998; Vermeer et al., 1998). However, there was no relationship between nitrate levels in drinking water and urinary excretion of nitrosamines in a Canadian population exposed to nitrate levels below 10 mg/L as nitrate-nitrogen (Levallois et al., 2000).

Vermeer et al. (1999) evaluated the effects of ascorbic acid and green tea on urinary excretion of carcinogenic NDMA and *N*-piperazine in 25 healthy female volunteers consuming a fish meal rich in amines as nitrosatable precursors in combination with nitrate-containing drinking water at 3.65 mg NO_3^-/kg bw/day (0.84 mg/kg bw/day as NO_3-N) for 7 consecutive days. Intake of 250 mg and 1000 mg ascorbic acid per day resulted in a significant decrease in urinary NDMA excretion during the last 4–7 days ($P = 0.0001$), but not during days 1–3 of the experiment. Also, consumption of four cups of green tea per day (equivalent to 2 g per day of tea) significantly decreased NDMA excretion during days 4–7 ($P = 0.0035$), but not during days 1–3. Surprisingly, consumption of eight cups of green tea per day (equivalent to 4 g per day of tea) significantly increased NDMA excretion during days 4–7 ($P = 0.0001$), but again not during days 1–3.

9.4   Mode of action
9.4.1   Non-cancer
9.4.1.1 Methaemoglobinaemia
The key events in the mode of action by which nitrate and nitrite are reported to cause methaemoglobinaemia in humans and experimental animals are as follows:

1. Reduction of nitrate to nitrite: As described in Section 8.3, microorganisms in saliva and the gastrointestinal tract reduce exogenous nitrate to nitrite in humans and in most laboratory animals, except in rats, where this process is deficient. In addition, changes to a more neutral intestinal pH promote the growth of microorganisms and hence the reduction of nitrate to nitrite. In infants, the variable stomach pH (2–5) may permit the growth of nitrate-reducing bacteria (Zeman et al., 2002) and therefore increase the infant's risk of forming methaemoglobin.

2. Oxidation of haemoglobin to methaemoglobin: The essential action in the formation of methaemoglobin is the oxidation of the ferrous ion of haemoglobin to the ferric ion, which can occur by the direct action of oxidants, the action of hydrogen donors in the presence of oxygen or auto-oxidation. In the presence of nitrite, oxidation is direct (Gupta et al., 1999). Methaemoglobin formation was evident in both humans (> 100 mg NO_3^-/L; Section 9.1.1) and experimental animals (250 mg NO_2^-/L; Section 9.2.2.1). Originally, it was reported that a higher proportion of the haemoglobin in infants converts to methaemoglobin more readily, contributing to their increased susceptibility. However, foetal haemoglobin has the same

oxidation/reduction potential and auto-oxidation rate as adult haemoglobin, and thus this is not likely to contribute to increased infant susceptibility (Avery, 1999).

3. Deficient methaemoglobin reduction: Normally, the methaemoglobin (Hb^{3+}) that forms can be reduced to haemoglobin (Hb^{2+}) by the following reaction: Hb^{3+} + reduced cytochrome b5 → Hb^{2+} + oxidized cytochrome b5, where reduced cytochrome b5 is generated by NADH–cytochrome b5–methaemoglobin reductase (Gupta et al., 1999). A comparison of NADPH–methaemoglobin reductase activities between rats and humans revealed that the activity is 10 times higher in blood from rat foetuses than in pregnant rat or human cord blood; the activity was 1.5 times higher in blood from pregnant women than in human cord blood (NAS, 1981). In addition, the development of the infant NADH–methaemoglobin reductase system is incomplete; infants begin making adult levels of this enzyme at around 6 months of age (Avery, 1999; Gupta et al., 1999; Knobeloch et al., 2000; Sanchez-Echaniz et al., 2001). Thus, relatively lower amounts and activity of NADPH–methaemoglobin reductase in human neonates likely contribute to their susceptibility to methaemoglobinaemia.

4. Increased percentage of haemoglobin as methaemoglobin in blood: Under normal conditions, less than 2% of haemoglobin circulates in the blood as methaemoglobin (Fan et al., 1987). As methaemoglobin cannot bind oxygen, symptoms of methaemoglobinaemia appear in both humans (see Section 9.1) and experimental animals (Section 9.2) as the percentage of methaemoglobin increases (> 10% in the blood). Clinical methaemoglobinaemia is defined as greater than 2% methaemoglobin in blood. However, clinical symptoms are generally not present until the methaemoglobin level in blood reaches 3–15% of total haemoglobin (Avery, 1999; Zeman et al., 2002). Based on the proportion of methaemoglobin, alterations of various systems have been reported: at 10–20%, central cyanosis of limbs/trunk (blueness of skin); at 20–45%, central nervous system depression (headache, dizziness, fatigue and lethargy), dyspnoea and cyanosis; at 45–55%, coma, arrhythmias, shock, convulsions, cyanosis, dyspnoea, disorientation and tissue hypoxia; and above 60%, high risk of mortality (Knobeloch et al., 2000; Fewtrell, 2004).

5. Production of nitric oxide: As an alternative mode of action, some studies report that endogenous formation of nitrite resulting from overproduction of nitric oxide by tissues inflamed as a result of bacterial infection may be a significant cause of infant methaemoglobinaemia, greater than or instead of that caused by ingested nitrate (Hegesh and Shiloah, 1982; Avery, 1999). Infants suffering from diarrhoea and methaemoglobinaemia (without exposure to nitrate-contaminated water) excrete up to 10 times more nitrate daily than they ingest through food and water (Hegesh and Shiloah, 1982; Avery, 1999). The proposed mode of action is that nitric oxide is produced by several tissues in response to bacterial infection and inflammation. Nitric oxide metabolism produces nitrite and increased expression of inducible nitric oxide synthase messenger RNA accompanied by stool and plasma nitrate/nitrite levels. This nitrite production may be sufficient to overwhelm the underdeveloped methaemoglobin-reducing system of infants, which results in elevated levels of methaemoglobin and subsequently clinical signs of methaemoglobinaemia at higher methaemoglobin levels. Methaemoglobinaemia is apparently a well-known side effect of nitric oxide therapy for acute respiratory distress syndrome and persistent pulmonary hypertension in newborns (Avery, 1999).

9.4.1.2 Thyroid effects

    Disruption of thyroid hormones can lead to numerous adverse outcomes, including thyroid tumours and birth defects. However, humans do not get thyroid carcinomas as a result of decreased T_3 and T_4 levels because they are less susceptible to the effects of TSH on thyroid cell proliferation than are rodents (Crofton, 2008). Hence, we focus on the key events in the mode of action by which nitrate and nitrite are reported to cause thyroid effects and subsequently birth defects in humans and experimental animals. The key events are as follows:

1. <u>Inhibition of iodine uptake to thyroid:</u> Ingested nitrate inhibits thyroid uptake of iodide circulating in the blood by binding to NIS on the surface of thyroid follicular cells (Greer et al., 2002). Organification is a complex, enzyme-dependent process whereby iodide is oxidized and bound to tyrosyl residues within thyroglobulin, ultimately forming the thyroid hormones T_3 and T_4. If sufficient inhibition of iodide uptake occurs, formation of thyroid hormones is depressed. The NIS transports iodide across membranes of some non-thyroidal tissues as well; for example, in the mammary gland during lactation, iodide can be transferred from the mother to the infant (Kirk, 2006). The kinetics for nitrate/nitrite inhibition of iodide uptake in humans and experimental animals have not been reported.

   Other drinking water contaminants are also iodine uptake inhibitors. The relative potency of perchlorate to inhibit radioactive iodide uptake at the NIS in humans was found to be 15, 30 and 240 times that of thiocyanate, iodide, and nitrate, respectively on a molar concentration basis (Tonacchera et al., 2004). Importantly, Tonacchera et al., indicated a simple competitive interaction as the mode of action for these ions, rather than synergism or antagonism. Nitrite is not transported by the NIS (Eskandari et al., 1997) and therefore not relevant to the mode of action for thyroid toxicity. Based on these relative molar potencies, De Groef et al. (2006) calculated that nitrate and thiocyanate, acquired through drinking water or food, account for a much larger proportion of iodine uptake inhibition than perchlorate. However, only one study was available (Hunault et al., 2007) that reported thyroidal iodide uptake after nitrate exposure, and it reported no significant effects on thyroidal uptake in 10 human volunteers receiving sodium nitrate at a dose of 15 mg/kg bw (equivalent to 10.9 mg nitrate/kg bw) in 200 mL of drinking water for 28 days.

2. <u>Serum T_3 and T_4 changes:</u> Depression of thyroid hormone formation, secondary to inhibition of thyroidal iodide uptake, results in decreased thyroid hormone secretion into the circulation. Lower concentrations of thyroid hormones in the serum can activate the feedback mechanism to the HPT, resulting in increased TSH secretion, which in turn leads to signalling the thyroid to produce more thyroid hormones. However, with inhibition of iodide uptake, the production of thyroid hormones may be insufficient. It is not known to what levels thyroid hormone synthesis must be reduced before serum thyroid hormone levels are impacted to the extent that adverse effects occur in either humans or experimental animals. What is known is that given the same dose of the antithyroid compound propylthiouracil, rats exhibit a significant reduction in circulating thyroid hormone levels sooner than humans; the serum half-life of T_4 is 7–10 days in humans (Vulsma et al., 1989; Greer et al., 2002), but only a day in rats (Zoeller and Crofton, 2005). In addition, the adult human thyroid stores a large supply of thyroid hormones, maybe several months' worth (Greer et al., 2002). The human neonate has a serum half-life of T_4 of approximately 3 days (Vulsma et al., 1989), and intrathyroidal stores of T_4 are estimated to be less than 1 day's worth (reported in Zoeller and Crofton, 2005). The shorter thyroid hormone $t_{1/2}$ in neonates and rats implies that they must produce much more TH, thus requiring more iodide uptake. Therefore, neonates and rats are more sensitive to

uptake inhibitors than adult humans. In addition, rats have limited conversion of nitrate to nitrite and thus have more nitrate available to inhibit the NIS. Nevertheless, the ultimate adverse effect will be similar for humans and rats.

Although TSH is a well-accepted biomarker for hypothyroidism, a number of xenobiotics alter circulating thyroid hormone levels, but not TSH. The most commonly used biomarker of effect for exposure to thyroid-disrupting chemicals is serum total T_4 concentration (De Vito et al., 1999; Zoeller et al., 2007). Thyroid hormones are evolutionarily conserved molecules present in all vertebrates (Heyland and Morez, 2005). However, species differences in serum total T_4 levels and consequent adverse effects have not been reported.

In humans, very few studies have reported the measurement of thyroid hormone levels in plasma after nitrate exposure. The most relevant study reported a 4% increase in TSH concentrations and no changes in total T_4 or free T_3 levels in 324 children exposed to nitrate at 51–274 mg/L compared with 168 children exposed to nitrate in their drinking water at concentrations below 2 mg/L (Tajtakova et al., 2006; Radikova et al., 2008). In addition, Hunault et al. (2007) reported no significant effects on thyroid hormone plasma concentrations in 10 human volunteers receiving sodium nitrate in 200 mL of drinking water at a dose of 15 mg/kg bw/day (equivalent to 10.9 mg NO_3^-/kg bw/day) for 28 days. However, as humans can store several months' worth of thyroid hormones, the Hunault et al. (2007) study may not be of sufficient duration to detect changes in thyroid hormone levels. In rats, exposure to potassium nitrate at 150 mg/L (equivalent to 92.1 mg NO_3^-/L) in drinking water for 5 months reduced plasma T_3 levels by 34% and T_4 levels by 12% (reduction was dose dependent; refer to Section 9.2.3).

The set-point around which thyroid hormones are regulated is very individualistic, and differences in set-point are largely determined by genetics (Anderson et al., 2002, 2003; Hansen et al., 2004). The variance in serum T_3, T_4 and TSH levels in individuals is about half the range of population variance (Anderson et al., 2002). Studies have identified an elevated risk of cardiovascular disease in patients with elevated TSH levels and normal T_4 levels; conversely studies have found thyroid-disrupting chemicals associated with decreases in T_4 levels but no elevations in TSH levels (Miller et al., 2009). Therefore, a value within standard "normals" is not necessarily normal for the individual, and an elevated TSH level (which responds logarithmically to minor changes in T_3 and T_4 levels) should be interpreted as indicating that serum T_3 and T_4 levels are not normal for the individual (Anderson et al., 2002). Thus, identifying additional sensitive subpopulations and associations between thyroid disruptors and adverse outcomes is hindered by the ability to recognize risk in individuals who may have T_4 levels in the normal population range but below their own normal individual range. Therefore, any exposure that would result in altered thyroid hormone homeostasis in a population should be evaluated further (Miller et al., 2009).

3. Tissue T_3 changes: Peripheral tissues contain deiodinases, which convert T_4 to T_3. The biological actions of thyroid hormones are driven by T_3 binding to nuclear thyroid receptors, which then act as signal transducers and transcription factors to exert their diverse biological effects. Thyroid hormones regulate the transcription of many proteins and control neuronal migration, differentiation and apoptotic modelling (Kirk, 2006). The mechanisms by which thyroid hormones function through nuclear receptors to alter gene expression are highly conserved across species (studies reported in Miller et al., 2009).

Chronic stimulation of the thyroid gland by TSH can lead to proliferative changes in follicular cells, ultimately leading to hypertrophy, hyperplasia and hypothyroidism (Capen, 1997; Tonacchera et al., 2004; De Groef et al., 2006; Vanderpas, 2006). Adult experimental animals and humans are relatively resistant to adverse outcomes of impaired thyroid hormone production, as the HPT axis can compensate to a considerable extent for reduced thyroid hormone production. If nitrate/nitrite exposure is sufficiently high to overcome this compensation, persists for long enough to exhaust thyroid gland stores of thyroid hormone or is combined with exposure to other thyroid disrupting chemicals, combined with dietary iodide deficiencies, hypothyroidism or enlargement of thyroid will likely occur. In addition, pregnancy causes increased demand on the thyroid gland, and hypothyroidism is twice as common during pregnancy (Aoki et al., 2007).

In humans, exposure to nitrate in drinking water at concentrations at and above 50 mg/L resulted in increased thyroid volume and thyroperoxidase levels as well as increased incidence of goitre (refer to Section 9.1.2.1). In rats, exposure to sodium nitrate concentrations of 50 mg/L (equivalent to 36.45 mg NO_3^-/L) and above for 30 weeks increased the weight of the thyroid (refer to Section 9.2.3).

4. <u>Altered development and birth defects:</u> Moderate or even transient thyroid hormone insufficiency can cause specific developmental defects in rodents and humans. For example, small differences in point estimates of maternal T_4 levels during the early foetal period are associated with adverse outcomes (e.g., reduced intelligence quotient scores), even though these deficits do not constitute clinical hypothyroidism (many references reported in Miller et al., 2009). Importantly, effects on the developing organism result from decreases in tissue levels of T_4 or T_3 independently of TSH level (Crofton, 2008). In addition to the degree of thyroid hormone insufficiency, the developmental timing of thyroid hormone insufficiency and the duration of the perturbation are important (Kirk, 2006; Miller et al., 2009).

Thyroid hormones are essential to neurological development, skeletal growth and normal function of the pulmonary system, metabolism, kidney, cardiovascular system and serum lipids (Kirk, 2006; De Escobar et al., 2008; Woodruff et al., 2008; Miller et al., 2009). Mild hypothyroidism leads to a general malaise, inertia, and reduced heart rate and body heat–producing capability, among other symptoms. In contrast, even transient disruption of thyroid hormone synthesis can induce persistent adverse effects on cognitive and sensory capabilities if it occurs during critically sensitive windows of foetal and postnatal development (Howdeshell, 2002; Kirk, 2006). Molecular signalling pathways by which thyroid hormones affect development, energy balance and metabolism are conserved in all taxonomic groups (Miller et al., 2009).

Formal dose–response studies have not been conducted to determine to what extent plasma thyroid hormone levels must decrease before brain development is impaired in either experimental animals or humans. However, there is a large body of literature correlating reductions in circulating thyroid hormone levels with cognitive deficits in humans, either in the offspring (in the absence of overt hypothyroidism in the child at birth or later) of females with decreased thyroid hormone levels or in adults who were diagnosed with congenital hypothyroidism as children (many references cited in Zoeller and Crofton, 2005).

Evidence of developmental and birth defects has been reported for nitrate concentrations above 45 mg/L in drinking water in humans (refer to Section 9.1.4), and a sodium nitrate concentration of 2000 mg/L (equivalent to 1458 mg NO_3^-/L) in drinking water in animals

from gestational day 13 to birth resulted in alteration of neurological parameters (refer to Section 9.2.7) however, further studies of the role of thyroid hormones and the validity of these endpoints is needed before strong conclusions can be made.

Cross-species extrapolation is hindered by lack of knowledge of the differences in the mode of action. Relevance analysis for other thyroid-disrupting chemicals (polychlorinated biphenyls, propylthiouracil and perchlorate) suggests that concordance between rodent and human modes of action depends on the life stage of exposure; there is a good degree of concordance for developmental neurotoxicity using altered thyroid hormone concentrations as a key event (Zoeller and Crofton, 2005). To increase confidence in the relevance of this mode of action, the following data gaps must be resolved: comparative data between serum and brain tissue levels of thyroid hormones, comparative studies on the effects of moderate and mild hypothyroxinaemia on nervous system development and clear characterization of the dose–response relationship between degree of thyroid hormone concentration change and adverse effects (Crofton, 2008).

High quality studies examining the effects of nitrate on thyroid function in vulnerable populations are clearly needed. Such studies ideally would be carried out in iodine-sufficient regions, would account for exposures to other NIS inhibitors, would measure both thyroid function and thyroid peroxidase antibody status and would use individual biomarkers for nitrate exposure (urine or saliva) instead of employing an ecologic study design.

9.4.2   Cancer effects

There is evidence that the possible carcinogenic effects of ingested nitrate/nitrite are directly dependent upon the endogenous formation of the genotoxic/carcinogenic NOCs, which in the case of nitrate must be preceded by its reduction to nitrite. The endogenous formation of NOCs is also called endogenous nitrosation. In fact, the nitrosating agents that arise from nitrite readily react with nitrosatable compounds, especially secondary amines and alkyl amides, to generate NOCs. Many NOCs are carcinogenic (IARC, 2010).

In general, the process by which ingested nitrate is involved in cancer can be summarized in four main key events, namely: 1) reduction of nitrate to nitrite; 2) endogenous nitrosation (discussed in details in section 9.3); 3) conversion of NOCs to highly reactive (alkylating) species and 4) alkylation of intracellular macromolecules (DNA, RNA and proteins), which is responsible for subsequent tumour formation. These key events are described below.

1.   Reduction of nitrate to nitrite

Nitrate balance studies and analysis of body fluids demonstrated that, in the human body, the oral cavity is the main site of nitrate reduction to nitrite (Gangolli et al., 1994). Thus, there is strong evidence that in healthy humans, about 25% of ingested nitrate (including that from drinking water) is actively secreted and concentrated in the salivary glands by an anion transport system, of which about 20% is reduced to nitrite by the oral microflora (Spiegelhalder et al., 1976; Tannenbaum et al., 1976). Ultimately, about 5% (range 4–7% of the overall dose) of ingested nitrate is reduced to nitrite in saliva (Walker, 1990; Gangolli et al., 1994). As most saliva is swallowed, salivary nitrite constitutes the main source of gastric nitrite (Eisenbrand et al., 1980; Mirvish et al., 2000; McColl, 2007). It has been estimated that the majority of nitrite in the normal acidic stomach arises from the oral reduction of ingested nitrate (about 80%), as compared to that in nitrite-preserved meat and fish and other foods (Mirvish, 1983; Knight et al., 1987; Bos et al.,

1988); for these reasons, gastric nitrite is considered to be the major source of nitrite exposure for humans (Eisenbrand et al., 1980; Forman et al., 1985).

There is evidence that the reduction of nitrate to nitrite is modulated by several factors, such as the extent of bacterial colonization of the mouth; the age of individuals; and the enterosalivary nitrate circulation-related factors, including salivary flow rate, redox potential in the mouth (optimal pH about 8) and the stomach, pH values in the stomach, absorption of nitrate in the small intestine, endogenous synthesis in the tissues and active transport from blood to the salivary gland (Eisenbrand et al., 1980; Duncan et al., 1995, 1997). All these factors contribute to a great variability in the reduction of nitrate to nitrite in individuals.

In healthy people, reduction of nitrate to nitrite is due to the action of different strains of nitroreductase-containing bacteria, and this reduction is concentrated at the rear of the dorsal region of the tongue. Doel et al. (2005) identified a total of 132 nitrate reductase–positive colony isolates from the oral cavity, including the saliva, from 10 subjects (4 females and 6 males) aged 29 years on average. According to Suzuki et al. (2005) and McColl (2007), these bacteria convert 10–30% of salivary nitrate to nitrite.

The microbial nitrate reductase activity in the oral cavity has been quantitatively characterized in several studies *in vitro* (Shapiro et al., 1991; Xu et al., 2001) and *in vivo* (Spiegelhalder et al., 1976; Bartholomew and Hill, 1984; Granli et al., 1989; Van Maanen et al., 1994). Indeed, marked interindividual and diurnal variations in the salivary nitrate to nitrite conversion were observed *in vitro* (Walker, 1990) and *in vivo* ((Bos et al., 1988; Xu et al., 2001; Doel et al., 2005). These interindividual variations seem to be particularly influenced by age. Thus, there is evidence that in healthy people, nitrite levels increase with age and are particularly high in young children and seniors (Eisenbrand et al., 1980; Forman et al., 1988; Siddiqi et al., 1992; Mirvish et al., 2000).

These interindividual variations are in addition to smaller intraindividual variations (Bos et al., 1988; Walker, 1990; Mirvish et al., 2000; Xu et al., 2001; Doel et al., 2005). In addition to the high nitrite levels in seniors, Mirvish et al. (2000) found that saliva nitrite levels rose at night, but that saliva nitrate and nitrite levels varied little from day to day.

In general, these increases in nitrite levels appeared to reflect the relative increase in the oral microflora. Indeed, Kang et al. (2006) reported that saliva of a young child and a senior showed higher bacterial diversity than that of young adults, and it was reported that bacteria which colonise the dorsum of the tongue convert approximately 30% of the nitrate to nitrite (Bos et al., 1988; Mirvish et al., 2000; Xu et al., 2001; Suzuki et al., 2005; McColl, 2007) reported maximum rates of nitrate reduction up to 30%.

Moreover, the nitrate reductase activity in the oral cavity appears to be influenced by seasonal conditions (i.e., temperature). Xu et al. (2001) found that the average nitrate reductase activity measured in June for 10 subjects (3.43 ± 1.75 µg NO_3-N per person per minute) was significantly higher than that measured in November for 10 other subjects (1.54 ± 0.46 µg NO_3-N per person per minute). The proportions of nitrite to total nitrate/nitrite in populations in Germany were 17.4%, as compared to 25.2% in people in Egypt where the temperature is much higher (Siddiqi et al., 1992).

2. Endogenous nitrosation

The possible process by which ingested nitrate and nitrite might be involved in cancer induction could be explained by the mechanism of endogenous nitrosation. Details on this process have been given in Section 9.3.

3. Conversion of N-nitroso compounds to alkylating species

There is ample evidence from studies in experimental animals that NOCs are carcinogenic because they generate potent electrophilic alkylating agents in the body, which are formed either by spontaneous decomposition, in the case of nitrosamides and related compounds, or by metabolic activation, in the case of nitrosamines (Archer, 1989):

$$NOCs \rightarrow (biotransformation) \rightarrow R\text{-}(CH_3)_n$$

Nitrosamides and related compounds (nitrosoureas, nitrosoguanidines, nitrosourethanes, nitrosocyanamides) (direct acting) are chemically reactive and very unstable in aqueous solvents, basic and neutral media, and even in physiological pH. In acid, they decompose to give rise to important quantities of nitrites (Mirvish, 1975b). Besides acid-based decomposition, there is also a non-enzymatic decomposition to reactive electrophilic alkylating intermediates (Montesano, 1976; Archer, 1989; Mirvish, 1991; Gangolli et al., 1994; Vermeer and Van Maanen, 2001). This decomposition has been reported to occur by base-catalysed hydrolysis and varies with pH and the structure of the acyl and alkyl residues (Montesano, 1976). The listed intermediates are highly unstable, with physiological half-lives for the most stable of them, the α-hydroxynitrosamines, of 1–10 seconds. Hence, nitrosamides are probably activated mostly in the organs where tumours develop (Mirvish, 1995) and are therefore known as direct-acting mutagens/carcinogens (Walker, 1990; Mirvish, 1991; Gangolli et al., 1994; Vermeer and Van Maanen, 2001).

In contrast, nitrosamines are chemically stable (even in physiological conditions), slowly decompose in light or in acid aqueous solutions (Brown, 1999) and are usually volatile, unless they possess other functional groups (Mirvish, 1995). They require metabolic activation *in vivo* in order to exert mutagenicity and carcinogenic effects. They generally persist in the body for longer periods than do the chemically reactive nitrosamides (Montesano, 1976; Archer, 1989; Mirvish, 1991; Gangolli et al., 1994). This difference explains why nitrosamides tend to induce tumours at or near the site of their application and organs with rapid turnover, whereas nitrosamines produce tumours in tissues remote from the site of administration (Montesano, 1976; Archer, 1989; Vermeer and Van Maanen, 2001). Another particularity of nitrosamines is the striking organotropism (specific to organs) of their effects, no matter the route of their administration (Mirvish, 1995; Vermeer and Van Maanen, 2001; Dietrich et al., 2005).

Early experiments (Druckrey et al., 1967; Magee and Barnes, 1967) on the pharmacokinetics and *in vivo* and *in vitro* metabolism of nitrosamines suggested two pathways for their biotransformation: α-hydroxylation and denitrosation (Archer, 1989). However, effects of nitrosamines are attributed to the α-hydroxylation pathway; the toxicological denitrosation was considered to make little contribution to the overall toxic effects of these compounds (IPCS, 2002).

4. DNA adduct formation

The reactive electrophilic alkylating species produced by chemical decomposition of nitrosamides and related compounds or by metabolic activation of nitrosamines subsequently react with cellular components such as DNA, RNA and proteins (Montesano, 1976; Archer, 1989; Crespi and Ramazzotti, 1991). Attention has focused on reactions with DNA, because this is generally considered to be the critical cellular target for carcinogens during tumour initiation (Montesano, 1976; Archer, 1989); thus, principal consideration is given here to interactions with this macromolecule.

The reactive species (i.e., alkyldiazonium cations) alkylate DNA bases, especially at the N^7 (66.8%) and O^6 (6.1%) positions of guanine and the O^4 (trace) position of thymine (the numbers in parentheses are the relative proportions of the products as a percentage of the total products for methylation of DNA in rat liver by NDMA) (Archer, 1989; Mirvish, 1995). Moreover, the O^6 position was shown to be of major importance in both the initiation of mutations and the cytotoxicity actions of alkylating agents, as it is the position involved in base pairing (Sedgwick, 1997).

Other sites of DNA alkylation that have been proposed as potentially miscoding are N^3-alkyladenine, N^3-alkylguanine and O^4-alkylthymine (Montesano, 1976). The extent of alkylation at the various sites in DNA is dependent on the alkylating species: the methylcarbonium cations derived from NOCs are highly reactive and less selective and thus produce a wide spectrum of products (Montesano, 1976; Brown, 1999).

10.0   Classification and assessment

There is no clear evidence of carcinogenicity from nitrate or nitrite *per se* in humans. Consequently, sections 10.1 and 10.2 will consider non-cancer health effects from nitrate and nitrite, respectively. However, a cancer risk may exist under conditions of endogenous nitrosation of ingested nitrate and/or nitrite, which is assessed in section 10.3.

10.1   Nitrate

Methaemoglobinemia has long been considered to be the end-point of concern for humans from exposure to nitrate in drinking water. Scientific studies show cases of methaemoglobinemia occurring in bottle-fed infants, which are the vulnerable population for these effects. Recent evidence from animal and human studies suggests that effects on thyroid gland function are also an end-point of concern. Although numerous epidemiological studies have investigated the relationship between exposure to nitrate in drinking water and cancer occurrence, the weight of evidence does not clearly support an association between cancer and exposure to nitrates *per se*. This is consistent with the conclusions established by IARC (2010) that there is inadequate evidence in humans for the carcinogenicity of nitrate *per se* from exposure in food or in drinking water. However, current science suggests an association between cancer and exposure to nitrates in drinking water when conditions result in nitrosation within the human body (see section 10.3).

Scientific studies published since the 1950s show methaemoglobinemia as the end-point of concern for nitrate in humans. These studies found infantile methaemoglobinemia associated with the ingestion of nitrate in drinking water at levels exceeding 100 mg NO_3^-/L (Walton et al., 1951; Shuval and Gruener, 1972; Fan and Steinberg, 1996; Zeeman et al., 2002). A review of the science (Fan and Steinberg, 1996) reported no increased incidence of infantile

methaemoglobinemia from exposure to nitrate in drinking water at levels below 45 mg/L. However, most studies failed to account for confounding factors such as bacterial contamination of the drinking water. Such contamination may cause intestinal inflammation in infants, which increases endogenous conversion of nitrate to nitrite and leads to methaemoglobinemia (Avery, 1999).

Current evidence also suggests that exposure to nitrate in drinking water may alter human thyroid gland function. While studies found that exposure to nitrate concentrations greater than 50 mg/L are weakly associated with altered thyroid function, the evidence is limited, conflicting and based on studies with important methodological limitations (Van Maanen et al., 1994; Zaki et al., 2004; Eskiocak et al., 2005; Tajtakova et al., 2006; Gatseva and Argirova, 2008a; 2008b; Radikova et al., 2008). Mode of action data suggests that pregnant women and infants are the sensitive population due primarily to the importance of adequate thyroid hormone for normal neurodevelopment in the fetus and infant, but also due to increased thyroidal turnover in foetal and early life. However, the findings from the only study that examined the effects of drinking water nitrate on thyroid function in pregnant women were inconclusive (Gatseva and Argirova, 2008b). Decreased thyroid function has only been observed in school-aged children exposed to 50-264 mg/L of nitrate in drinking water in studies conducted in Bulgaria and Slovakia. Studies have seen an effect in school-age children, but no study has examined nitrate's effect on infant thyroid function. Although infants' thyroidal iodine turnover is lower than that of school-aged children, their average drinking water consumption is lower. The lack of appropriate scientific data does not allow for the calculation of a conversion factor from school-aged children to infants. However, levels protective for school-aged children are expected to be similarly protective for infants.

While no single key study is appropriate to establish a guideline for nitrate in drinking water, the current weight of evidence does not show adverse health effects (either methaemoglobinemia or thyroid effects) occurring below 45 mg/L for nitrate in drinking water in the populations studied. Infants are identified as the most sensitive populations for these health effects. Based on this evidence, a health-based value (HBV) of 45 mg/L is established for nitrate in drinking water.

10.2   Nitrite

Scientific studies published since the 1950s consistently show methaemoglobinemia in infants as the end-point of concern for nitrate or nitrite in humans. Based on its mode of action, nitrite is the toxic moiety of concern. Nitrite, either directly from drinking water or formed endogenously from nitrate exposure, binds haemoglobin to cause methaemoglobinemia. Hence, studies of nitrate exposure are important for assessing nitrite-induced methaemoglobinemia. The original study by Walton et al. (1951) found acute cases of clinical infantile methaemoglobinemia associated with the ingestion of nitrate in drinking water at levels exceeding 100 mg nitrate/L. A review of the science found no incidences of methaemoglobinemia at levels less than 45 mg/L for nitrate in drinking water for bottle-fed infants less than 6 months of age (Fan and Steinberg, 1996). The majority of studies that were published since Walton et al. (1951) looking at associations between infantile methaemoglobinemia and ingestion of nitrate in drinking water similarly report levels of nitrate exceeding 100 mg/L (Shuval and Gruener, 1972; Fan and Steinberg, 1996; Zeeman et al., 2002).

However, most studies of methaemoglobinemia failed to account for such confounding factors as bacterial contamination of the drinking water, which may cause intestinal inflammation in infants and increase endogenous conversion of nitrate to nitrite and subsequently methaemoglobinemia (Avery, 1999). Based on the above human data and on the mode of action for nitrite's toxicity, infants are the most sensitive subpopulation. Infants are more susceptible to methaemoglobinemia since 1) their stomach pH is less acidic, promoting the growth of bacteria that convert nitrate to nitrite, which binds to haemoglobin to cause methaemoglobinemia, and 2) the amount and activity of the enzyme which reduces methaemoglobin is deficient in infants until approximately 6 months of age. Thus a MAC for nitrite-induced infant effects will be protective of the general population.

There is no definitive evidence of the direct carcinogenicity of nitrite *per se* in experimental animals by different routes of exposure (WHO, 2007; IARC, 2010). In most of the studies in which mice or rats were exposed to sodium nitrite alone by gavage, in the diet, or in drinking water, the incidences of tumours were usually not significantly higher than controls. Current evidence indicates that nitrite may not act directly as a carcinogen in animals (WHO, 2007; IARC, 2010). Because of its mutagenicity in microbial systems, its possible role in the induction of stomach and oesophageal cancer in humans and its role in the induction of cancer in experimental animals (in the presence of amino compounds), nitrite could be considered to be a promoter of cancer. However, current science suggests an association between cancer and exposure to nitrites in drinking water when conditions result in nitrosation within the human body (see section 10.3).

The health-based value for nitrite-induced infantile methaemoglobinemia is derived based on 1) no incidences of methaemoglobinemia at levels less than 45 mg/L for nitrate in drinking water for bottle-fed infants less than 6 months of age, 2) converting 45 mg/L nitrate to corresponding molar concentration for nitrite, 3) multiplying by a factor of 0.1 to account for the estimated conversion rate of nitrate to nitrite in infants where nitrite is formed endogenously from nitrate at a rate of 5 to 10% and 4) multiplying by a source allocation factor for drinking water of 100% or 1, since a bottle-fed infants' primary exposure to nitrite is through consumption of formula reconstituted with nitrate or nitrite -containing drinking water. Since the HBV is based on the most sensitive subgroup of the population (bottle-fed infants less than six months of age), application of an uncertainty factor is not deemed necessary. The HBV for nitrite is calculated as follows:

$$\text{HBV} = \frac{45 \text{ mg/L} \times \text{MW}_{NO2} \times 0.1 \times 1}{\text{MW}_{NO3}}$$

$$= \frac{45 \text{ mg/L} \times 46 \text{ g/mole} \times 0.1 \times 1}{62 \text{ g/mole}}$$

$$= 3.3 \text{ mg/L, equivalent to 1 mg/L as nitrogen}$$

$$\simeq 3 \text{ mg/L}$$

The HBV of 3 mg/L as NO_2 (or 1 mg/L as NO_2-N) will be protective against endogenous and exogenous formation of nitrite-induced methaemoglobinemia in bottle-fed infants and the general population.

10.3   Cancer risk related to endogenous nitrosation

Because of the biological plausibility of endogenous nitrosation of ingested nitrate and nitrite, there is a possibility that a cancer risk may exist. IARC (2010) has classified "ingested nitrate or nitrite under conditions that result in endogenous nitrosation" as probably carcinogenic to humans (Group 2A).

There is clear evidence of the carcinogenicity of the mixture of nitrite plus nitrosatable compounds in experimental animals via several routes of exposure, including ingestion of drinking water. When extremely high doses of both nitrite and nitrosatable precursors (amines or amides) were simultaneously administered orally, increased tumour incidence was seen (WHO, 2007). These types of tumours were usually characteristic of the preformed NOCs and therefore presumed to originate from the corresponding NOC endogenously formed.

Although there are several cancer bioassays in rodents available, it was difficult to derive a conclusion, because most of the studies used large doses of nitrosation precursors (nitrite and nitrosatable precursors), and different precursors at different concentrations in different species. Moreover, the designs of most of the studies were usually limited (e.g., group sizes were not as large as recommended by standard bioassays; maximal tolerated doses were not determined for the nitrosatable precursors or their combinations with nitrite; single dose levels used; limited histopathological examination performed).

There is ample evidence that the products of the endogenous nitrosation of nitrosatable compounds by nitrite are genotoxic both *in vitro* and *in vivo* (Brambilla and Martelli, 2007). Concurrent administration of nitrite and nitrosatable compounds to rodents induced genetic modifications, such as reduction of DNA synthesis and methylation of nucleic acids. Furthermore, the results of studies performed in the last four decades clearly indicate that the products formed by endogenous drug nitrosation may represent a genotoxic/carcinogenic risk to humans (Brambilla, 1985; Brambilla and Martelli, 2007).

10.3.1 Quantitative risk assessment

An important step in assessing the importance of endogenous nitrosation in the aetiology of cancer is the estimation of rates of formation of NOCs in the human stomach (Licht and Deen, 1988). The estimation of the risk of cancer arising from ingested nitrate/nitrite through the endogenous nitrosation process requires the quantification of the endogenous formation of NOCs, which in humans must be preceded by the conversion of nitrate into nitrite. Although there have been several bioassays of exposure to nitrite plus nitrosatable compounds in experimental animals, there are no reliable dose–response studies in which tumour induction has been observed to increase with the doses of nitrite and nitrosatable compounds administered concurrently. Nevertheless, those studies are all supportive of a positive association between exposure to nitrite plus amino compounds and cancer induction.

Several experiments in humans attempted to characterize endogenous nitrosation, but the accuracy of its quantification is still a matter of debate. However, the literature is consistent on the fact that cancer risk associated with endogenous nitrosamine formation is a function of four variables: 1) the amount of nitrite ingested or formed from nitrate, 2) the amount of nitrosatable

substances ingested, 3) the rate of *in vivo* nitrosation and 4) the carcinogenic potency of the resulting nitrosamine. Considering the above, modelling techniques that would permit analysis of the complex relationship between exogenous and endogenously formed nitrate, nitrite and NOCs are currently seen as the best way to characterize endogenous nitrosation (NAS, 1981).

To assess to what extent a Dutch population might be subject to cancer risks associated with the ingestion of dietary nitrate, Zeilmaker et al. (2010) used an indirect methodology to quantify the *in vivo* gastric exposure to NDMA arising from the consumption of a fish plus vegetable meal. They conducted a dynamic *in vitro* gastrointestinal model to simulate NDMA formation in the stomach. The experimental results were combined with statistical modelling of Dutch food consumption data, resulting in predicted exposures to endogenously formed NDMA in the population. The exposure data were analysed by a probabilistic exposure model, resulting in the distribution of long-term average exposures in the population. From this study, the 95th percentile of the long-term exposure distribution was around 4 ng/kg bw in young children 1 year of age and 0.4 ng/kg bw in adults. Furthermore, the long-term exposure distribution was combined with a dose–response analysis (linearized multistage model, using the benchmark dose approach) of the liver cancer incidence data from rat studies with NDMA (Peto et al., 1991a, 1991b) to obtain a cancer risk distribution for the human population. They assumed that a linear dose–response (LVM-E4 model) would be the worst case. The 95th percentile of that distribution was estimated as the extra risk for 5-year-old children and for adults. From this study, it was concluded that the combined consumption of fish and nitrate-rich vegetables appears to lead to marginal increases of additional cancer risk.

This study did not use drinking water as the route of exposure; instead, it used estimations of nitrate intake from vegetables. Although vegetables are the primary source of nitrate when levels of nitrate in the drinking water are low, many vegetables (such as those used in the study of Zeilmaker et al., 2010) contain vitamin C or other inhibitors of endogenous nitrosation. Nitrate from these sources may then result in less endogenous formation of NOCs compared with nitrate in drinking water (IARC, 2010).

Two large research projects were conducted in the province of Quebec to assess the impact of intensive agricultural activities on groundwater sources in some rural regions. One of the two projects, led by the Université Laval, focused on public drinking water sources. The other, a joint study by the Ministère du Développement durable, de l'Environnement et des Parcs, the Ministère de l'Agriculture, des Pêcheries et de l'Alimentation, the Ministère de la Santé et des Services sociaux and the Institut National de Santé Publique, assessed private wells. Both research projects included a quantitative probabilistic risk assessment, conducted to estimate human excess cancer risk associated with the consumption of drinking water contaminated by nitrates (Phaneuf et al., 2004; Chébékoué, 2008).

10.3.1.1 Estimation of endogenous formation of nitrosamines: exposure model

The research projects (Phaneuf, 2004; Chébékoué, 2008) used a simple mathematical model from a peer-reviewed publication (Shephard et al., 1987) to estimate the amounts of nitrosamines endogenously formed in the human stomach after intake of drinking water with known nitrate concentrations. The model calculates the daily dose of a specific amine formed *in vivo* as proportional to the amount of ingested amine precursors and the square of the gastric concentration of ingested nitrite based, as suggested by the kinetics work done to date, using the following equation:

$$DD_{nitros} = \frac{[NO_2^-]^2 \times DI_{am} \times K_{am} \times 3600 \times MW_{nitros}}{bw} \qquad [1]$$

where:

DD_{nitros} = daily dose of a specific nitrosamine (mg/kg bw/day);

$[NO_2^-]$ = gastric nitrite concentration (mol/L), assumed to correspond to the entire amount of salivary nitrite arising from the reduction of the total nitrite from contaminated drinking water by the oral flora. This variable is squared because two molecules of nitrite ion are required to form one molecule of the nitrosating species N_2O_3;

DI_{am} = total daily intake of amine (mol/day);

K_{am} = nitrosatability rate constant $((mol/L)^{-2} \cdot s^{-1})$, an indication of the relative ease of nitrosation of a specific amine;

3600 = 1 hour, measured in seconds; estimation of time during which concentrations of amine and nitrite precursors would remain constant through the oesophageal/cardia region;

MW_{nitros} = molecular weight of the specific nitrosamine (mg/mol);

bw = average body weight of an adult, estimated as 70 kg.

In order to take into account the variability within the studied population, the probability distributions of the input parameters (i.e., gastric nitrite concentration, total daily intake of specific amine) were estimated by Monte Carlo analysis. Thereafter, the distribution of the amount of individual nitrosamine formed in the stomach, as shown by DD_{nitros}, was computed from outputs of Monte Carlo simulations.

Estimation of gastric nitrite concentrations

$$[NO_2^-] = \frac{[NO_3^-] \times TR \times WC}{V_s} \qquad [2]$$

where:

$[NO_2^-]$ = gastric nitrite concentration (mol/L);

$[NO_3^-]$ = nitrate concentration (mol/L). The concentrations were converted from mg NO_3-N/L, using a conversion factor of 4.429 (1/0.226; 0.226 mg NO_3-N/L corresponds to 1 mg/L as NO_3^-) and the molecular weight of nitrate (62 g/mol);

TR = transformation rate of nitrate into nitrite, using the maximal rate of 0.3; The literature suggests that this rate increases with age in healthy people (Eisenbrand et al., 1980; Forman, 1989; Siddiqi et al., 1992), and maximum rates reaching approximately 30% have been reported (Bos et al. 1988; Mirvish, 2000; Xu et al., 2001; Suzuki et al., 2005; McColl, 2007);

WC = daily water consumption (L); and

V_s = stomach volume (L), estimated to be 0.5 L. The volume of the stomach is actually around 1 L. However the esophageal/cardia region, where salivary nitrites first encounter acidic gastric juice, is known to escape the buffering effect of food and remains highly acidic even after meals. As well, the active secretion of the

inhibitory ascorbic acid occurs downstream in the antral region. Consequently, this region is the main site allowing maximal luminal nitrosation (McColl, 2007).

Estimation of daily intake of amines

Distribution was fitted to this parameter of the model using mean and standard deviation values from their computed statistics. The daily intake of a specific dietary secondary amine was estimated by multiplying the ingestion rate of each food item containing it by the corresponding amine concentration (Shephard et al., 1987) and summing across all foods as follows:

$$\text{DI}_{am} = \frac{([am]_f \times IR_f)_i + ([am]_f \times IR_f)_j + \ldots + ([am]_f \times IR_f)_n}{MW_{am}} \qquad [3]$$

where:
DI_{am} = total daily intake of a specific amine (mol/day);
$[am]_f$ = amine concentration in a specific food item (mg/kg);
IR_f = estimated ingestion rate of specific food item (kg/day), based on Canadian food consumption data (Chébékoué, 2008) and U.S. food database (Phaneuf et al., 2004);
MW_{am} = molecular weight of the amine (mg/mol); and
i, j, …, n = specific food item.

10.3.1.2 Estimation of cancer risk

A non-threshold model was applied for the estimations of cancer risks, as it represents the worst-case dose–response at low doses. The model assumes that health risk is linearly related to both the carcinogenic potency and the daily endogenous formation of each specific nitrosamine (Shephard et al., 1987). Considering the above, the overall cancer risk distribution was estimated by calculating the cancer risk at each individual Monte Carlo exposure result underlying the exposure distribution:

$$\text{ER} = \text{DD}_{nitros} \times \text{CPF}_{human} \qquad [4]$$

where:
ER = excess cancer risk associated with exposure to a daily dose of a specific nitrosamine formed in the stomach after the ingestion of drinking water;
DD_{nitros} = daily dose of nitrosamine (mg/kg bw/day), as per equation [1] above; and
CPF_{human} = human cancer potency factor ((dose unit/day)$^{-1}$). It is the excess cancer risk associated with exposure to 1 dose unit of a given nitrosamine per day.

Chébékoué (2008) used the scaled human cancer potency (q_{human}), estimated by OEHHA (2005) from the upper 95% confidence bound on the linear coefficient q1 (q1*), for cancer risk estimations, which represents the most conservative dose–response model fitted. Phaneuf et al. (2004) used the non-scaled Integrated Risk Information System (IRIS) q1*. Because of the scaling factor, the OEHHA values (BW$^{3/4}$ was used for interspecies dose comparison) were approximately 2-fold lower than the IRIS values (BW$^{2/3}$ was used), providing a more conservative estimate.

The 95% upper bounds of the human cancer risks calculated for NDMA, *N*-nitrosodiethylamine (NDEA) and *N*-nitrosopyrrolidine (Phaneuf et al., 2004; Chébékoué, 2008) were less than 10^{-5}. Estimates of the excess cancer risks arising from endogenous exposure to these nitrosamines in a human population for 70 years calculated in both these studies indicate that the excess cancer risk is unlikely to be significant.

10.3.2 *Example of calculation for NDMA*

Although available data are not sufficient for nitrosamines to estimate risks from their endogenous formation, the recent health risk assessment conducted for NDMA (Health Canada, 2011) can be used to calculate a point estimate of the ER. The unit risks were calculated on the basis of the TD_{05} values (i.e., the dose level that causes a 5% increase in tumour incidence over background) that were derived by fitting a multistage model to the data of the carcinogenicity studies of NDMA in rat by Peto et al. (1991a, 1991b). TD_{05} values are the doses at which the excess risk of biliary cistadenomas and liver carcinomas was increased by 5% over background. An experimental animal to human allometric scaling factor of $(0.35/70)^{1/4}$ was applied to the resulting unit risks in order to take into account the interspecies differences in susceptibility to NDMA (Health Canada, 2011).

The concentration of nitrite in the stomach is calculated using equation [2] from section 10.3.1.1:

$$[NO_2^-] \quad = \quad \frac{[NO_3^-] \ \times \ TR \ \times \ WC}{V_s} \qquad\qquad [2]$$

$$[NO_2^-] \quad = \quad \frac{[\,45 \div (62 \times 10^3)] \times 0.3 \times 1.5}{0.5}$$

$$= \quad 6.53 \times 10^{-4} \text{ moles/L}$$

where:
$[NO_3^-]$ = drinking water nitrate concentration of 45 mg/L as nitrate, converted to moles/L (HBV, as defined in section 10.1);
TR = transformation rate from nitrate into nitrite of 30%; and
WC = water consumption; 1.5 L is the estimated daily volume of tap water consumed by an adult.

We can then calculate the daily intake of the amine, in this case DMA, using equation [3] from above:

$$DI_{am} \quad = \quad \frac{([am]_f \times IR_f)_i + ([am]_f \times IR_f)_j + \ldots + ([am]_f \times IR_f)_n}{MW_{am}} \qquad [3]$$

$$DI_{DMA} \quad = \quad \frac{0.123 \times 70}{45 \times 10^3}$$

$$= \quad 1.91 \times 10^{-4} \text{ moles/day}$$

where:

$([am]_f \times IR_f)$ = the product of the amine concentration in a specific food item, multiplied by the estimated ingestion rate of specific food item, expressed in mg/day; the sum of these products can also be calculated by multiplying the 95th percentile of the distribution value of the daily intake of DMA (0.123 mg/kg bw/day from Phaneuf et al., 2004) by the body weight of an adult (70 kg);

MW_{DMA} = molecular weight of DMA (45×10^3 mg/mol); and

$i, j, \ldots, n$ = specific food item.

The daily dose of endogenously formed NDMA is then calculated using equation [1]:

$$DD_{nitros} \quad = \quad \frac{[NO_2^-]^2 \times DI_{am} \times K_{am} \times 3600 \times MW_{nitros}}{bw} \qquad [1]$$

$$DD_{NDMA} \quad = \quad \frac{[6.53 \times 10^{-4}]^2 \times 1.91 \times 10^{-4} \times 0.002 \times 3600 \times 74 \times 10^3}{70}$$

$$= \quad 6.21 \times 10^{-7} \text{ mg/kg bw/day}$$

$$= \quad 6.21 \times 10^{-4} \text{ μg/kg bw/day}$$

$[NO_2^-]$ = gastric nitrite concentration (mol/L), calculated as 6.53×10^{-4} moles/L;

DI_{am} = total daily intake of amine (mol/day), calculated as 1.91×10^{-4} moles/day;

K_{am} = nitrosatability rate constant of 0.002 $mol/L^{-2} \cdot s^{-1}$;

3600 = estimation of time during which concentrations of amine and nitrite precursors would remain constant through the oesophageal/cardia region; measured in seconds;

MW_{nitros} = molecular weight of the specific nitrosamine (mg/mol), 74×10^3 for NDMA;

bw = average body weight of an adult, estimated as 70 kg.

Finally, the excess risk of cancer from the endogenous formation of NDMA from DMA is calculated as follows:

ER = $DD_{nitros} \times CPF_{human}$ \qquad [4]

$$ER_{NDMA} \quad = \quad 6.21 \times 10^{-4} \text{ (μg/kg bw/day)} \times 1.04 \times 10^{-2} \text{ (μg/kg bw/day)}^{-1}$$
$$= \quad 6.46 \times 10^{-6}$$
$$\approx \quad 6.5 \times 10^{-6}$$

where:

DD_{NDMA} =   daily dose of endogenously formed NDMA calculated above (6.21×10^{-4} µg/kg bw/day);

CPF_{human} =   95% upper bound of the TD_{05} for liver carcinomas (1.04×10^{-2} (µg/kg bw/day)$^{-1}$) (Health Canada, 2011).

Based on exposure to nitrate in drinking water at a level equivalent to the HBV of 45 mg/L, the estimated lifetime excess cancer risk from the endogenous formation of NDMA is 6.5×10^{-6}, which is in the range of risk considered to be essentially negligible.

Theoretically, ingestion of drinking water nitrate could increase the risk of cancer in humans to a level considered to be essentially negligible. Zeilmaker et al. (2010) reached the same conclusion for dietary nitrates, even after they took into account inhibition of endogenous nitrosation.

10.3.3 Risk characterization

The Quantitative Risk Assessment (QRA) described above incorporates several assumptions and inherent uncertainties. Despite the fact we used a number of worst case assumptions, the theoretical risk is still low. However, these numerical values should only be used as a rough estimate of the potential risk for the population exposed through drinking water.

NDMA was chosen as the model compound to be used in the QRA primarily because it represented the compound with the most available data to be used in the assessment. NDMA should not be considered to be representative of all NOCs.

Several other assumptions were made in order to conduct the QRA, including the assumption that NDMA is formed entirely from dimethylamine, through a direct relationship. The nitrosation of dimethylamine could be more complex, and several other nitrosated derivatives could be formed, limiting NDMA production. In addition, it has been demonstrated that some nitrosatable compounds can give rise to various different types of NOCs in the stomach, complicating the risk assessment (Mirvish, 1975a). The formation of C-nitroso compounds (most of which may be noncarcinogenic or weaker carcinogens than N-nitroso compounds) may compete with N-nitrosation for nitrite in the stomach. Another reaction which could compete with N-nitrosation is the formation of the unstable thiolnitrites (Crespi and Ramazzotti, 1991).

Despite these limitations, the model used for the purpose of this quantitative risk assessment makes it possible to identify some significant gaps in our knowledge regarding the factors that influence the most the nitrosamine formation: the rate of transformation of nitrate into nitrite and the exposure levels of amino compounds.

Nitrate exposure can be modified by endogenous synthesis. Although the majority of nitrate in the body arises from ingested nitrate, there is substantial endogenous synthesis of nitrate. This process is estimated to produce 1 mmol nitrate/day (equivalent to 62 mg of nitrate ions per day) in adults under normal conditions (Mensinga et al., 2003; WHO, 2007). This endogenous synthesis has complicated studies of the metabolism and pharmacokinetics of nitrate and nitrite, many of which can provide only qualitative or semi-quantitative data on their inter-conversion *in vivo*.

Other critical factors about which a gap exists are data on dietary concentrations of amino compounds (amine or amide substrates). Until there is more information on the dietary concentrations of amine or amide precursors, it will remain extremely difficult to assess the

importance of the gastric formation of *N*-nitroso compounds in the etiology of cancer. There is also a need for accurate estimates of the rate of inhibition of the endogenous nitrosation. There currently exists a wide range of estimated values from different studies. A better characterization of the inhibition of the endogenous nitrosation may facilitate more accurate estimates of this parameter (Licht and Deen, 1988).

10.4   Comparison of cancer and non-cancer risk assessment

IARC (2010) has established a classification of nitrate in group 2A, stating "ingested nitrate or nitrite under conditions that result in endogenous nitrosation" is probably carcinogenic to humans. However, currently available scientific evidence from animal and human studies relating to endogenous nitrosation is insufficient as a basis for establishing a drinking water guideline based on cancer. However, it is possible to estimate the cancer risk related to a known nitrosamine, NDMA, formed through endogenous nitrosation at a specific level of exposure of nitrate in drinking water. Based on exposure to nitrate in drinking water at a level equivalent to the HBV of 45 mg/L, the estimated increased lifetime cancer risk above background for NDMA would be 6.5×10^{-6}, which is within the range of risk considered by Health Canada to be essentially negligible (1×10^{-6} to 1×10^{-5}).

10.5   International considerations

The U.S. EPA (1991) has established a maximum contaminant level (MCL) of 10 mg/L for nitrate-nitrogen or 45 mg/L for nitrate ion, based on acute clinical signs of cyanosis after nitrate exposure associated with methaemoglobinaemia in infants, and an MCL of 1 mg/L for nitrite-nitrogen or 3.3 mg/L for nitrite ion. It has also established a joint standard for the sum of the concentration of nitrate and nitrite at 10 mg/L as nitrogen. The combined standard does not replace the individual maximum contaminant levels for nitrate or nitrite, and therefore the maximum contribution from nitrite cannot exceed 1 mg/L as nitrite-nitrogen.

The Joint Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations (FAO)/WHO Expert Committee on Food Additives (JECFA) reconfirmed an ADI of 0–3.7 mg/kg bw for nitrate and an ADI of 0–0.07 mg/kg bw for nitrite (FAO/WHO, 2003a, 2003b). For nitrate, the ADI was based on a no-observed-effect level (NOEL) of 370 mg/kg bw/day as nitrate ion for growth depression, derived from long-term studies in rats and a subchronic study in dogs and using a safety factor of 100 (×10 for interspecies and ×10 for interindividual differences). Even though rats may not be a good model for humans, because of their low conversion of nitrate to nitrite in saliva, these studies were considered relevant for risk assessment based on a similar NOAEL found in dog and rodent toxicokinetics. JECFA also derived a "transposed" NOAEL for nitrate based on 1) a NOEL of 6.7 mg/kg bw/day for nitrite ion identified in a 2-year rat study in which heart and lung effects were observed at the next highest dose (Maekawa et al., 1982); 2) 5% conversion of nitrate to nitrite in saliva; and 3) an uncertainty factor of 50, resulting in an ADI of 0–3.2 mg/kg bw for nitrate; as this value did not differ substantially from the previous ADI, they did not change the ADI (FAO/WHO, 2003a). For nitrite, the ADI was derived based on the NOEL of 6.7 mg/kg bw/day for nitrite ion (Maekawa et al., 1982) and using a safety factor of 100. JECFA concluded that it would be appropriate to establish an acute reference dose for nitrite. EFSA (2008) found no new data that would require the revision of JECFA's ADI.

WHO (2007) established a drinking water guideline value of 50 mg/L as nitrate based on epidemiological evidence for methaemoglobinaemia in infants resulting from short term

exposure, which is protective for bottle-fed infants and the rest of the population. Microbial contamination and subsequent gastrointestinal infection were noted as a significant risk for bottle-fed infants; as such, WHO recommends that water containing nitrate levels above 100 mg/L not be used for bottle-fed infants and making sure that the water is microbiologically safe. A drinking water guideline value of 3 mg/L as nitrite for short term exposure was established, also based on methaemoglobinaemia in infants derived from epidemiological data indicating that methaemoglobinaemia has been observed in infants exposed to doses of nitrite ranging from 0.4 to > 200 mg/kg bw, considering a body weight of 5 kg for an infant and a drinking water consumption of 0.75 L/day. WHO has also established a provisional drinking water guideline for long-term exposure to nitrite at 0.2 mg/L, based on a 60 kg adult, consuming 2 L/day with 10% allocation factor to the ADI of 0.07 mg/kg bw/day derived by JECFA (FAO/WHO, 2003a). This guideline is considered provisional owing to the uncertainty surrounding the susceptibility of humans compared with animals. For simultaneous exposure to nitrate and nitrite in drinking water, the sum of the ratios of the concentrations of each of its guideline values should not exceed one.

11.0   Rationale

Nitrate and nitrite are widespread in the environment. They can occur naturally or as a result of human activities, including agriculture and water treatment. The main route of exposure is from the ingestion of food; nitrite formed by the reduction of nitrate by oral bacteria represents approximately 80% of total exposure to nitrite.

11.1   Nitrate

Methaemoglobinemia has long been considered to be the end-point of concern for humans from exposure to nitrate in drinking water. Scientific studies show cases of methaemoglobinemia occurring in bottle-fed infants, which are the vulnerable population for these effects. Recent evidence from animal and human studies suggests that effects on thyroid gland function are also an end-point of concern. Studies have seen an effect in school-age children, but no study has looked at this health effect in infant, who would also be expected to be the most vulnerable population for this health effect. Current scientific evidence also suggests an association between cancer and exposure to nitrates in drinking water when conditions result in nitrosation within the human body. IARC has concluded that there is inadequate evidence in humans for the carcinogenicity of nitrate, but also classified ingested nitrates as probably carcinogenic to humans under conditions that result in endogenous nitrosation.

Scientific studies have consistently shown methaemoglobinemia as an end-point of concern for nitrate in humans, but only at concentrations greater than 45 mg/L in drinking water. However, these studies failed to account for confounding factors such as bacterial contamination of the drinking water. Infants are considered to be the most sensitive subpopulation for methaemoglobinemia.

Current evidence also suggests that exposure to nitrate in drinking water may alter human thyroid gland function. While studies found that exposure to nitrate concentrations greater than 50 mg/L are weakly associated with altered thyroid function, the evidence is limited, conflicting and based on studies with important methodological limitations. Infants are the most sensitive sub-population for this endpoint since the serum half-life and storage time of their thyroid

hormones are much shorter. In addition, exposure to nitrate during pregnancy may affect thyroid hormone production, which could have some impact on foetal development.

Although no single study can be used to establish a guideline for nitrate in drinking water, available studies in humans show no adverse health effect (either methaemoglobinemia or thyroid effects) below 45 mg/L of nitrate in drinking water. For the purpose of this document, the human risk from cancer has been calculated based on the endogenous formation of a specific *N*-nitroso compound, NDMA, using a number of worst-case assumptions. The estimated lifetime excess cancer risk from the endogenous formation of NDMA associated with ingestion of drinking water containing 45 mg/L of nitrate is 6.5×10^{-6}, which is in the range of risk considered by Health Canada to be essentially negligible (1×10^{-6} to 1×10^{-5}).

The MAC for nitrate is established at 45 mg/L (equivalent to 10 mg/L measured as nitrate-nitrogen), to be protective of the health of the most sensitive subpopulation, bottle-fed infants. It is measurable and achievable by current treatment technologies (both municipal and residential scales). As part of its ongoing guideline review process, Health Canada will continue to monitor new research in this area and recommend any change to the guideline that it deems necessary. Monitoring of science will focus particularly on thyroid effects, including neurodevelopmental effects, in the most sensitive subpopulation.

11.2 Nitrite

Nitrite-induced methaemoglobinemia has been chosen as the endpoint of concern for nitrite in drinking water. Infants have been identified as the most sensitive sub-population for this endpoint since 1) their stomach pH is less acidic, promoting the growth of bacteria that convert nitrate to nitrite, which binds to haemoglobin to cause methaemoglobinemia, and 2) the amount and activity of the enzyme which reduces methaemoglobin is deficient in infants until approximately 6 months of age.

The guideline for nitrite in drinking water is established as maximum acceptable concentration of 3 mg/L (equivalent to 1 mg/L as nitrogen). The MAC is protective against endogenous and exogenous formation of nitrite-induced methaemoglobinemia in bottle-fed infants and the general population. As part of its ongoing guideline review process, Health Canada will continue to monitor new research in this area and recommend any change to the guideline that it deems necessary.

12.0   References

Agriculture and Agri-Food Canada (2010). Environmental sustainability of Canadian agriculture: Agri-Environmental Indicator Report Series—Report # 3. W. Eilers, R. MacKay, L. Graham and A. Lefebvre (eds.). Ottawa, Ontario. Available at: www4.agr.gc.ca/resources/prod/doc/prog/pdf/asca-aedc_rep2010_eng.pdf

Addiscott, T.M. and Benjamin, N. (2004). Nitrate and human health. Soil Use Manage., 20(2): 98–104.

Alavantić, D., Sunjevarić, I., Cerović, G., Bozin, D. and Pecevski, J. (1988). *In vivo* genotoxicity of nitrates and nitrites in germ cells of male mice. II. Unscheduled DNA synthesis and sperm abnormality after treatment of spermatids. Mutat. Res., 204: 697–701.

Aly, H.A., Mansour, A.M., Abo-Salem, O.M., Abd-Ellah, H.F. and Abdel-Naim, A.B. (2010). Potential testicular toxicity of sodium nitrate in adult rats. Food Chem Toxicol. 48(2):572-8.

Anderson, L.M., Giner-Sorolla, A., Haller, I.M. and Budinger, J.M. (1985). Effects of cimetidine, nitrite, cimetidine plus nitrite, and nitrosocimetidine on tumors in mice following transplacental plus chronic lifetime exposure. Cancer Res., 45(8): 3561–3566.

Anderson, S., Pedersen, K.M., Bruun, N.H. and Laurberg, P. (2002). Narrow individual variations in serum T(4) and T(3) in normal subjects: A clue to the understanding of subclinical thyroid disease. J. Clin. Endocrinol. Metab. 87(3):1068-72. [cited in Miller et al., 2009].

Anderson, S., Bruun, N.H., Pedersen, K.M. and Laurberg, P. (2003). Biologic variation is important for interpretation of thyroid function tests. Thyroid 13(11):1069-78. [cited in Miller et al., 2009].

Andrews, A.W., Fornwald, J.A. and Lijinsky, W. (1980). Nitrosation and mutagenicity of some amine drugs. Toxicol. Appl. Pharmacol., 52(2): 237–244.

Andrews, D.A. and Harward, C. (1994). Isleham ion-exchange nitrate-removal plant. J. Inst. Water Environ. Manage., 8(2): 12–127.

Aoki, Y., Belin, R.M., Clickner, R., Jeffries, R., Phillips, L. and Mahaffey, K.R. (2007). Serum TSH and total T_4 in the United States population and their association with participant characteristics: National Health and Nutrition Examination Survey (NHANES 1999–2002). Thyroid, 17(12): 1211–1223.

Aoyagi, M., Matsukura, N. and Uchida, E. (1980). Induction of liver tumors in Wistar rats by sodium nitrite given in pellet diet. J. Natl. Cancer Inst., 65(2): 411–414.

APHA, American Water Works Association and Water Environment Federation (1992). Standard methods for the examination of water and wastewater. 18th edition. American Public Health Association, Washington, DC.

APHA, American Water Works Association and Water Environment Federation (1995). Standard methods for the examination of water and wastewater. 19th edition. American Public Health Association, Washington, DC.

APHA, American Water Works Association and Water Environment Federation (1998). Standard methods for the examination of water and wastewater. 20th edition. American Public Health Association, Washington, DC.

APHA, American Water Works Association and Water Environment Federation (2000). Standard methods for the examination of water and wastewater. Online edition. American Public Health Association, Washington, DC.

APHA, American Water Works Association and Water Environment Federation (2005). Standard methods for the examination of water and wastewater. 21st edition. American Public Health Association, Washington, DC.

Appelo, C.A.J. and Postma, C. (1996). Geochemistry, groundwater and pollution.A.A. Balkam Publishers, Rotterdam, Netherlands.

Arbuckle, T.E., Sherman, G.J., Corey, P.N., Walters, D. and Lo, B. (1988). Water nitrates and CNS birth defects: A population-based case-control study. Arch. Environ. Health, 43(2):162-7 :162-7.

Archer, M.C. (1989). Mechanisms of action of *N*-nitroso compounds. Cancer Surv., 8(2): 241–250.

Asahina, S., Friedman, M.A., Arnold, E., Millar, G.N., Mishkin, M., Bishop, Y. and Epstein, S.S. (1971). Acute synergistic toxicity and hepatic necrosis following oral administration of sodium nitrite and secondary amines to mice. Cancer Res., 31(9): 1201–1205.

Aschengrau, A., Zierler, S. and Cohen, A. (1989). Quality of community drinking water and the occurrence of spontaneous abortion. Arch. Environ. Health, 44(5): 283–290.

Aschengrau, A., Zierler, S. and Cohen, A. (1993). Quality of community drinking water and the occurrence of late adverse pregnancy outcomes. Arch. Environ. Health, 48(2): 105–113.

Astill, B.D. and Mulligan, L.T. (1977). Phenolic antioxidants and the inhibition of hepatotoxicity from *N*-dimethylnitrosamine formed in situ in the rat stomach. Food Cosmet. Toxicol., 15(3): 167–171.

ASTM (1997). D4327-97: Standard test method for anions in water by chemically suppressed ion chromatography. ASTM International, West Conshohocken, Pennsylvania.

ASTM (1999). D3867-99: Standard test methods for nitrite-nitrate in water. ASTM International, West Conshohocken, Pennsylvania.

ASTM (2003). D4327-03: Standard test method for anions in water by chemically suppressed ion chromatography. ASTM International, West Conshohocken, Pennsylvania.

ATSDR (2007). Case studies in environmental medicine nitrate/nitrite toxicity. Agency for Toxic Substances and Disease Registry, Centre for Disease Control, U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, Atlanta, GA. Available at: www.atsdr.cdc.gov/csem/nitrate/docs/nitrate_nitrite.pdf

Avery, A.A. (1999). Infantile methemoglobinemia: reexamining the role of drinking water nitrates. Environ. Health Perspect., 107(7): 583−586.

AWWA (1995). AWWA Manual M38 Electrodialysis and electrodialysis reversal. American Water Works Association, Denver, Colorado.

Balimandawa, M., de Meester, C. and Léonard, A. (1994). The mutagenicity of nitrite in the *Salmonella*/microsome test system. Mutat. Res., 321: 7–11.

Barale, R., Zucconi, D. and Loprieno, N. (1981). A mutagenicity methodology for assessing the formation of *N*-dimethylnitrosamine *in vivo*. Mutat. Res., 85(2): 57–70.

Baribeau, H. (2006). Chapter 6: Growth and inactivation of nitrifying bacteria. In: Fundamentals and control of nitrification in chloraminated drinking water distribution systems. Manual of Water Supply Practices M56. 1st edition. American Water Works Association, Denver, Colorado.

Baribeau, H. (2010). Chloramination issues: Overview of nitrification; AWWA Inorganic Contaminants Workshop, Denver, Colorado – March 2.

Barrett, J.H., Parslow, R.C., McKinney, P.A., Law, G.R. and Forman, D. (1998). Nitrate in drinking water and the incidence of gastric, esophageal, and brain cancer in Yorkshire, England. Cancer Causes Control, 9(2): 153–159.

Bartholomew, B. and Hill, M.J. (1984). The pharmacology of dietary nitrate and the origin of urinary nitrate. Food Chem. Toxicol., 22(10): 789–795.

Bartsch, H., Ohshima, H. and Pignatelli, B. (1988). Inhibitors of endogenous nitrosation. Mechanisms and implications in human cancer prevention. Mutat. Res., 202(2): 307–324.

Bartsch, H., Ohshima, H., Pignatelli, B. and Calmels, S. (1989). Human exposure to endogenous *N*-nitroso compounds: quantitative estimates in subjects at high risk for cancer of the oral cavity, oesophagus, stomach and urinary bladder. Cancer Surv., 8(2): 335–362.

Bartsch, H., Ohshima, H., Shuker, D.E., Pignatelli, B. and Calmels, S. (1990). Exposure of humans to endogenous *N*-nitroso compounds: implications in cancer etiology. Mutat. Res., 238(3): 255–267.

Below, H., Zollner, H., Volzke, H. and Kramer, A. (2008). Evaluation of nitrate influence on thyroid volume of adults in a previously iodine-deficient area. Int. J. Hyg. Environ. Health, 211(1–2): 186–191.

Beresford, S.A.A. (1985). Is nitrate in the drinking water associated with the risk of cancer in the urban UK? Int. J. Epidemiol., 14(1): 57−63.

Beszedits, S. and Walker, L. (1998). Nitrate removal from drinking water supplies. B & L Information Services, Toronto, Ontario.

Bingham, S.A., Pignatelli, B., Pollock, J.R., Ellul, A., Malaveille, C., Gross, G., Runswick, S., Cummings, J.H. and O'Neill, I.K. (1996). Does increased endogenous formation of *N*-nitroso compounds in the human colon explain the association between red meat and colon cancer? Carcinogenesis, 17(3): 515–523.

Blount, B.C., Pirkle, J.L., Osterloh, J.D., Valentin-Blasini, L. and Caldwell, K.L. (2006). Urinary perchlorate and thyroid hormone levels in adolescent and adult men and women living in the United States. Environ. Health Perspect., 114(12): 1865−1871.

Blount, B.C., Rich, D.Q., Valentin-Blasini, L., Lashley, S., Ananth, C.V., Murphy, E., Smulian, J.C., Spain, B.J., Barr, D.B., Ledoux, T., Hore, P. and Robson, M. (2009). Perinatal exposure to perchlorate, thiocyanate, and nitrate in New Jersey mothers and newborns. Environ. Sci. Technol., 43(19): 7543–7549.

Blowers, L., Preston-Martin, S. and Mack, W.J. (1997). Dietary and other lifestyle factors of women with brain gliomas in Los Angeles County (California, USA). Cancer Causes Control, 8(1): 5–12.

Bohdziewicz, J., Bodzek, M. and Wasik, E. (1999). The application of reverse osmosis and nanofiltration to the removal of nitrates from groundwater. Desalination, 121: 139–147.

Boink, A.B.T.J., Dormans, J.A.M.A., Speijers, G.J.A. and Vleeming, W. (1999). Effects of nitrates and nitrites in experimental animals. In: Managing risks of nitrates to humans and the environment. W.S. Wilson, A.S. Ball and R.H. Hinton (eds.). Royal Society of Chemistry, Cambridge. pp. 317–326.

Bolton, J.R. and Stefan, M.I. (2000). UV-photodegradation as a treatment technology for *N*-nitrosodimethylamine (NDMA). In: Proceedings of the American Water Works Association Water Quality and Technology Conference, Salt Lake City, UT, November 5–9, 2000. American Water Works Association, Denver, Colorado.

Bos, P.M.J., Van Den Brandt, P.A., Wedel, M. and Ockhuizen, T. (1988). The reproducibility of the conversion of nitrate to nitrite in human saliva after a nitrate load. Food Chem. Toxicol., 26(2): 93–97.

Brambilla, G. (1985). Genotoxic effects of drug/nitrite interaction products: evidence for the need of risk assessment. Pharmacol. Res. Commun., 17(4): 307–321.

Brambilla, G. and Martelli, A. (2005). Keynote comment: Nitrosatable drugs, cancer, and guidelines for genotoxicity. Lancet Oncol., 6(8): 538–539.

Brambilla, G. and Martelli, A. (2007). Genotoxic and carcinogenic risk to humans of drug–nitrite interaction products. Mutat. Res., 635(1): 17–52.

Brams, A., Buchet, J.P., Crutzen-Fayt, M.C., De Meester, C., Lauwerys, R. and Léonard, A. (1987). A comparative study, with 40 chemicals, of the efficiency of the *Salmonella* assay and the SOS chromotest (kit procedure). Toxicol. Lett., 38: 123–133.

Brender, J.D., Olive, J.M., Felkner, M., Suarez, L., Marckwardt, W. and Hendricks, K.A. (2004). Dietary nitrites and nitrates, nitrosatable drugs, and neural tube defects. Epidemiology, 15(3): 330–336.

Brown, J.L. (1999). *N*-Nitrosamines. Occup. Med., 14(4): 839–848.

Brunato, F., Garziera, M.G. and Briguglio, E. (2003). A severe methaemoglobinemia induced by nitrates: a case report. Eur. J. Emerg. Med., 10(4): 326–330.

Bruning-Fann, C.S. and Kaneene, J.B. (1993). The effects of nitrate, nitrite and *N*-nitroso compounds on human health: a review. Vet. Hum. Toxicol., 35(6): 521–538.

Budayová, E. (1985). Effects of sodium nitrite and potassium sorbate on *in vitro* cultured mammalian cells. Neoplasma, 32: 341–350.

Bukowski, J., Somers, G. and Bryanton, J. (2001). Agricultural contamination of groundwater as a possible risk factor for growth restriction or prematurity. J. Occup. Environ. Med., 43(4): 377–383.

Bunin, G.R., Kuijten, R.R., Boesel, C.P., Buckley, J.D. and Meadows, A.T. (1994). Maternal diet and risk of astrocytic glioma in children: a report from the Children's Cancer Group (United States and Canada). Cancer Causes Control, 5(2): 177–187.

Burkart, M.R. and Stoner, J.D. (2002). Nitrate in aquifers beneath agricultural systems. Wat Sci.and Technol. 45(9):19-29

Capen, C.C. (1997). Mechanistic data and risk assessment of selected toxic end points of the thyroid gland. Toxicol. Pathol., 25(1): 39–48.

Caron, M., Levallois, P., Gingras, S. and Phaneuf, D. (2004). Étude de la consommation d'eau dans la population adulte. Quebec City, Quebec.

Cartes, P., Jara, A., Domanet, R. and de la Luz, M. (2009). Urease activities and nitrogen mineralization kinetics as affected by temperature and urea input rate in southern Chilean andisols. J. Soil Sci. Plant Nutr., 9(1): 69–82.

Casu, A., Carlini, M., Contu, A., Bottazzo, G.F. and Songini, M. (2000). Type 1 diabetes in Sardinia is not linked to nitrate levels in drinking water. Diabetes Care, 23(7): 1043–1044.

Casey, B.M, Dashe, J.S., Wells, C.E., McIntire, D.D., Leveno, K.J. and Cunningham , F.G. (2006). Subclinical hyperthyroidism and pregnancy outcomes. Obstet. Gynecol., 107(2 Pt 1):337-41.

CDC (1996). Spontaneous abortions possibly related to ingestion of nitrate-contaminated well water—LaGrange county, Indiana, 1991–1994. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention MMWR Morb. Mortal. Wkly. Rep., 45(26): 569–572.

CDC (1997). Methemoglobinemia attributable to nitrite contamination of potable water through boiler fluid additives—New Jersey, 1992 and 1996. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention MMWR Morb. Mortal. Wkly. Rep., 46(9): 202–204.

Cedergren, M.I., Selbing, A.J., Lofman, O. and Kallen, B.A. (2002). Chlorination byproducts and nitrate in drinking water and risk for congenital cardiac defects. Environ. Res., 89(2): 124–130.

Cevaal, J.N., Suratt, W.B. and Burke, J.E. (1995). Nitrate removal and water quality improvements with reverse osmosis for Brighton, Colorado. Desalination, 103: 101–111.

Chambers, P.A., Guy, M., Roberts, E.S., Charlton, M.N., Kent, R., Gagnon, C., Grove, G. and Foster, N. (2001). Nutrients and their impact on the Canadian environment. Agriculture and Agri-Food Canada, Environment Canada, Fisheries and Oceans Canada, Health Canada and Natural Resources Canada, Ottawa, Ontario. 241 pp.

Chan, W.C. and Fong, Y.Y. (1977). Ascorbic acid prevents liver tumor production by aminopyrine and nitrite in the rat. Int. J. Cancer, 20(2): 268–270.

Chang, C.C., Tsai, S.S., Wu, T.N. and Yang, C.Y. (2010). Nitrates in municipal drinking water and non-Hodgkin lymphoma: an ecological cancer case–control study in Taiwan. J. Toxicol. Environ. Health Part A, 73(4): 330–338.

Charmandari, E., Meadows, N., Patel, M., Johnston, A. and Benjamin, N. (2001). Plasma nitrate concentrations in children with infectious and noninfectious diarrhea. J. Pediatr. Gastroenterol. Nutr., 32(4): 423–427.

Chébékoué, S.F. (2008). Évaluation du risque cancérigène associé à la contamination de l'eau potable de puits municipaux par les nitrates/nitrites dans certaines régions rurales du Québec. Faculty of Medicine, Université de Montréal, Montreal, Quebec. (Master's thesis)

Chebi, P.B. and Hamano, T. (1995). Pilot runs at Santa Ana watershed project authority using Asahi electrodialysis. Desalination, 103: 69–78.

Chen, H., Ward, M.H., Tucker, K.L., Graubard, B.I., McComb, R.D., Potischman, N.A., Weisenburger, D.D. and Heineman, E.F. (2002). Diet and risk of adult glioma in eastern Nebraska, United States. Cancer Causes Control, 13(7): 647–655.

Chen, Y.X., Zhang, Y. and Chen, G.-H. (2003). Appropriate conditions or maximizing catalytic reduction efficiency of nitrate into nitrogen gas in groundwater. Water Res., 37: 2489–2495.

Chi, J., Zhang, S-T., Lu, X., Dong, L-H. and Yao, S-L (2004). Chemical reduction of nitrate by metallic ions. Journal of Water Supply: Research and Technology-Aqua 53(1):37-41.

Chiu, H,F., Tsai, S.S. and Yang, C.Y. (2007). Nitrate in drinking water and risk of death from bladder cancer: an ecological case–control study in Taiwan. J. Toxicol. Environ. Health Part A, 70 (12): 1000–1004.

Choi, B.C.K. (1985). *N*-Nitroso compounds and human cancer: a molecular epidemiologic approach. Am. J. Epidemiol., 121(5): 737.

Chow, C.K., Chen, C.J. and Gairola, C. (1980). Effect of nitrate and nitrite in drinking water on rats. Toxicol. Lett., 6(3): 199–206.

Clifford, D.A. (1990). Ion exchange and inorganic adsorption. Chapter 9. In: Water quality and treatment, Fred Pontius, ed. 4th Ed., pp. 561-639, McGraw Hill.

Clifford, D.A., Sorg, T.J. and Ghurye, G.L. (2011). Ion exchange and adsorption of inorganic contaminants. Chapter 12. In: Water quality and treatment - A handbook on drinking water, James K. Edzwald, ed. 6th Ed., McGraw-Hill.

Clifford, D. and Liu, C.X. (1995). A review of processes for removing nitrate from drinking water. In: Proceedings of the American Water Works Association Annual Conference, Anaheim, California. American Water Works Association, Denver, Colorado.

Clifford, D.A. (1999). Ion exchange and inorganic adsorption. In: Water quality and treatment—a handbook of community water supplies. R.D. Letterman, ed. 5th Ed. American Water Works Association and McGraw Hill, Inc., New York, New York. pp. 9.1–9.91.

Cocco, P., Broccia, G., Aru, G., Casula, P., Muntoni, S., Cantor, K.P. and Ward, M.H. (2003). Nitrate in community water supplies and incidence of non-Hodgkin's lymphoma in Sardinia, Italy. J. Epidemiol. Community Health, 57(7): 510–511.

Cohn, P., Cox, M. and Berger, P. (1999). Health and aesthetic aspects of water quality. In: Water quality and treatment—a handbook of community water supplies. R.D. Letterman, ed. 5th Ed. American Water Works Association and McGraw-Hill, New York, New York.

Cortas, N.K. and Wakid, N.W. (1991). Pharmacokinetic aspects of inorganic nitrate ingestion in man. Pharmacol. Toxicol., 68(3): 192–195.

Coss, A., Cantor, K.P., Reif, J.S., Lynch, C.F. and Ward, M.H. (2004). Pancreatic cancer and drinking water and dietary sources of nitrate and nitrite. Am. J. Epidemiol., 159(7): 693–701.

Craun, G.F., Greathouse, D.G. and Gunderson, D.H. (1981). Methaemoglobin levels in young children consuming high nitrate well water in the United States. Int. J. Epidemiol., 10(4): 309–317.

Crespi, M. and Ramazzotti, V. (1991). Evidence that *N*-nitroso compounds contribute to the causation of certain human cancers. In: Nitrate contamination: exposure, consequence, and control. I. Bogárdi, R.D. Kuzelka and W.G. Ennenga (eds.). Springer-Verlag, New York, New York. pp. 233–252.

Croen, L.A., Todoroff, K. and Shaw, G.M. (2001). Maternal exposure to nitrate from drinking water and diet and risk for neural tube defects. Am. J. Epidemiol., 153(4): 325–331.

Crofton, K.M. (2008). Thyroid disrupting chemicals: mechanisms and mixtures. Int. J. Androl., 31(2): 209–223.

Crofton, K.M., Craft, E.S., Hedge, J.M., Gennings, C., Simmons, J.E., Carchman, R.A., Carter, W.H., Jr and DeVito, M.J. (2005). Thyroid-hormone-disrupting chemicals: Evidence for dose-dependent additivity or synergism. Environ Health Perspect 113(11):1549-54.

Cross, A.J., Pollock, J.R. and Bingham, S.A. (2003). Haem, not protein or inorganic iron, is responsible for endogenous intestinal *N*-nitrosation arising from red meat. Cancer Res., 63(10): 2358–2360.

Cunliffe D.A. (1991). Bacterial nitrification in chloraminated water supplies. Applied and Environmental Microbiology pp, 3399-3202.

Dahab, M.F. (1991). Nitrate treatment methods: an overview. In: Nitrate contamination: exposure, consequence, and control. I. Bogárdi, R.D. Kuzelka and W.G. Ennenga (eds.). Springer-Verlag, New York, New York. pp. 349–368.

Dahlquist, G.G., Blom, L.G., Persson, L.A., Sandstrom, A.I. and Wall, S.G. (1990). Dietary factors and the risk of developing insulin dependent diabetes in childhood. Br. Med. J., 300(6735): 1302–1306.

Darad, R., De, A.K. and Aiyar, A.S. (1983). Toxicity of nitrite and dimethylamine in rats. Toxicol. Lett., 17(1–2): 125–130.

De Escobar, G.M., Ares, S., Berbel, P., Obregón, M.J. and del Rey, F.E. (2008). The changing role of maternal thyroid hormone in fetal brain development. Semin Perinatol., 32:380-6.

De Groef, B., Decallonne, B.R., Van der Geyten, S., Darras, V.M. and Bouillon, R. (2006). Perchlorate versus other environmental sodium/iodide symporter inhibitors: potential thyroid-related health effects. Eur. J. Endocrinol., 155(1): 17–25.

De Roos, A.J., Ward, M.H., Lynch, C.F. and Cantor, K.P. (2003). Nitrate in public water supplies and the risk of colon and rectum cancers. Epidemiology, 14(6): 640–649.

Department of National Health and Welfare (1993). Water treatment principles and applications. A manual for the production of drinking water. Published by the Canadian Water and Wastewater Association in cooperation with the Communication Group, Ottawa, Ontario.

DeSimone, L.A. (2009). Quality of water from domestic wells in principal aquifers of the United States, 1991–2004: U.S. Geological Survey Scientific Investigations Report 2008–5227, 139 pp. Available at: http://pubs.usgs.gov/sir/2008/5227

DeVito, M., Biegel, L., Brouwer, A., Brown, S., Brucker-Davis, F., Cheek, A.O., Christensen, R., Colborn, T., Cooke, P., Crissman, J. et al. (1999). Screening methods for thyroid hormone disruptors. Environ Health Perspect 107(5):407-15. [cited in Miller et al., 2009].

Dietrich, M., Block, G., Pogoda, J.M., Buffler, P., Hecht, S. and Preston-Martin, S. (2005). A review: Dietary and endogenously formed *N*-nitroso compounds and risk of childhood brain tumors. Cancer Causes Control, 16(6): 619–635.

Doel, J.J., Benjamin, N., Hector, M.P., Rogers, M. and Allaker, R.P. (2005). Evaluation of bacterial nitrate reduction in the human oral cavity. Eur. J. Oral Sci., 113(1): 14–19.

Dordelmann, O. (2009). Full-scale biological denitrification plants in Germany, Austria and Poland. In: Proceedings of the AWWA Water Quality and Technology Conference, Seattle, WA. American Water Works Association, Denver, Colorado.

Dorsch, M.M., Scragg, R.K., McMichael, A.J., Baghurst, P.A. and Dyer, K.F. (1984). Congenital malformations and maternal drinking water supply in rural South Australia: a case–control study. Am. J. Epidemiol., 119(4): 473–486.

Drewes, J., Bellona, C.L., Xu, P., Amy, G. and Oelker, G. (2008). Comparing nanofiltration and reverse osmosis for treating recycled water. American Water Works Association Research Foundation, Denver, Colorado.

Druckrey, H., Preussmann, R., Ivankovic, S. and Schmahl, D. (1967). [Organotropic carcinogenic effects of 65 various *N*-nitroso- compounds on BD rats.] Z. Krebsforsch., 69(2): 103–201 (in German).

Drury, C.F., Yang, J.K., De Jong, R., Yang, X.M., Huffman, E.C., Kirkwood, V. and Reid, K. (2007). Residual soil nitrogen indicator for agricultural land in Canada. Can. J. Soil Sci., 87: 167–177.

Dubrovsky, N. and Hamilton, P. (2010). Nutrients in the nation's streams and groundwater: national findings and implications. U.S. Geological Survey, Reston, Virginia (Fact Sheet 2010-3078; pubs.usgs.gov/fs/2010/3078/).

Dubrovsky, N.M., Burow, K.R., Clark, G.M., Gronberg, J.M., Hamilton P.A., Hitt, K.J., Mueller, D.K., Munn, M.D., Nolan, B.T., Puckett, L.J., Rupert, M.G., Short, T.M., Spahr, N.E., Sprague, L.A. and Wilber, W.G. (2010). The quality of our nation's waters—Nutrients in the nation's streams and groundwater, 1992–2004: U.S. Geological Survey, Reston, Virginia. Circular 1350, 174 pp.

Duncan, C., Dougall, H., Johnston, P., Green, S., Brogan, R., Leifert, C., Smith, L., Golden, M. and Benjamin, N. (1995). Chemical generation of nitric oxide in the mouth from the enterosalivary circulation of dietary nitrate. Nat. Med., 1(6): 546–551.

Duncan, C., Li, H., Dykhuizen, R., Frazer, R., Johnston, P., MacKnight, G., Smith, L., Lamza, K., McKenzie, H., Batt, L., Kelly, D., Golden, M., Benjamin, N. and Leifert, C. (1997). Protection against oral and gastrointestinal diseases: importance of dietary nitrate intake, oral nitrate reduction and enterosalivary nitrate circulation. Comp. Biochem. Physiol. A Physiol., 118(4): 939–948.

Duranceau, S. (2001). Selection of a nitrate removal process for the City of Seymour, Texas. In: Membrane practices for water treatment. S. Duranceau (ed.). American Water Works Association, Denver, Colorado.

ECETOC (1988). Nitrate and drinking water. European Centre for Ecotoxicology and Toxicology of Chemicals, Brussels (Technical Report No. 27).

Ecobichon, D.J., Allen, M. and Hicks, R (1985). The contamination of groundwater by agrochemicals as determined by a well water quality study in Carleton County: a report, 1984–1985. New Brunswick Department of Health, Fredericton, June.

Edwards, G., Whong, W.Z. and Speciner, N. (1979). Intrahepatic mutagenesis assay: a sensitive method for detecting *N*-nitrosomorpholine and *in vivo* nitrosation of morpholine. Mutat. Res., 64(6): 415–423.

Edwards, M. and Dudi, A. (2004). Role of chlorine and chloramines in corrosion in lead-bearing plumbing materials. J. Am. Water Works Assoc., 96(10): 69.

EFSA (2008). Opinion of the Scientific Panel on Contaminants in the Food chain on a request from the European Commission to perform a scientific risk assessment on nitrate in vegetables. European Food Safety Authority. Available at: www.efsa.europa.eu/en/efsajournal/doc/contam_ej_689_nitrate_en.pdf.

Egboka, B.C.E. (1984). Nitrate contamination of shallow groundwaters in Ontario, Canada. Sci. Total Environ., 35: 53.

Eisenbrand, G., Spiegelhalder, B. and Preussmann, R. (1980). Nitrate and nitrite in saliva. Oncology, 37(4): 227–231.

El Nahas, S.M., Globus, M. and Vethamany-Globus, S. (1984). Chromosomal aberrations induced by sodium nitrite in bone marrow of adult rats and liver cells of transplacentally exposed embryos. J. Toxicol. Environ. Health, 13: 643–647.

Elhannouni, F., Belhadj, M., Taky, M., Echihabi, L., Hafsi, M., El Abbassi, H., Cherif, A.T. and El Midaoui, A. (2000). Denitrification of ground water by electrodialysis using a new anion exchange membrane. Water Supply Res. Technol.–Aqua, 49(4): 211–218.

Elmidaoui, A., Menkouchi Sahli, M.A., Takaikt, M., Chay, L., Taky, M., Elmghair, M. and Hafsi, M. (2002). Selective nitrate removal by coupling electrodialysis and a bioreactor. Desalination, 153: 389–397.

Environment Canada (1992). National Air Pollution Surveillance (NAPS) annual summary 1990. Environmental Protection Service, Environment Canada, Ottawa, Ontario (Report EPS 7/AP/23).

Environment Canada (2003). Canadian water quality guidelines for the protection of aquatic life: nitrate ion. National Guidelines and Standards Office, Water Policy and Coordination Directorate, Environment Canada. 115 pp. (Ecosystem Health: Science-based Solutions Report No. 1-6; dsp-psd.pwgsc.gc.ca/Collection/En1-34-6-2003E.pdf).

Environment Canada (2010). Trends in nitrate ion. Cooperation on emission inventories, trends, and mapping. 1 p. Available at: www.ec.gc.ca/pcmar%2Dcabmp/default.asp?lang=en&n=ACBFF19F-1.

Environment New Brunswick (1983). Chemistry of municipal water supplies in New Brunswick. Environment New Brunswick, Fredericton (Internal Report D83-01).

Ericson, A., Kallen, B. and Lofkvist, E. (1988). Environmental factors in the etiology of neural tube defects: a negative study. Environ. Res., 45: 38–47.

Eskandari S, Loo DD, Dai G, Levy O, Wright EM and Carrasco N. (1997). Thyroid Na+/I- symporter. Mechanism, stoichiometry, and specificity. J Biol Chem. 272(43):27230-8.

Eskiocak, S., Dundar, C., Basoglu, T. and Altaner, S. (2005). The effects of taking chronic nitrate by drinking water on thyroid functions and morphology. Clin. Exp. Med., 5(2): 66–71.

Fan, A.M. and Steinberg, V.E. (1996). Health implications of nitrate and nitrite in drinking water: an update on methemoglobinemia occurrence and reproductive and development toxicity. Regul. Toxicol. Pharmacol., 23(1 Pt 1): 35–43.

Fan, A.M., Willhite, C.C. and Book, S.A. (1987). Evaluation of the nitrate drinking water standard with reference to infant methemoglobinemia and potential reproductive toxicity. Regul. Toxicol. Pharmacol., 7(2): 135–148.

FAO/WHO (2003a). Nitrate (and potential endogenous formation of *N*-nitroso compounds). Food and Agriculture Organisation of the United Nations/World Health Organization, Geneva (WHO Food Additive Series 50). Available at: www.inchem.org/documents/jecfa/jecmono/v50je06.htm

FAO/WHO (2003b). Nitrite (and potential endogenous formation of *N*-nitroso compounds). Food and Agriculture Organisation of the United Nations/World Health Organization, Geneva (WHO Food Additive Series 50). Available at: www.inchem.org/documents/jecfa/jecmono/v50je05.htm

FDA (1980a). Evaluation of the MIT nitrite feeding study to rats. Report by the Interagency Working Group on Nitrite Research. Food and Drug Administration, Public Health Service, U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, Washington, DC.

FDA (1980b). Re-evaluation of the pathology findings of studies on nitrite and cancer: histologic lesions in Sprague-Dawley rats. Final report submitted by the Universities Associated for Research and Education in Pathology to the Food and Drug Administration, Public Health Service, U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, washington, DC.

Fewtrell, L. (2004). Drinking-water nitrate, methemoglobinemia, and global burden of disease: a discussion. Environ. Health Perspect., 112(14): 1371–1374.

Finan, A., Keenan, P., Donovan, F.O., Mayne, P. and Murphy, J. (1998). Methaemoglobinaemia associated with sodium nitrite in three siblings. Br. Med. J., 317(7166): 1138–1139.

Fitzgerald, D., Kiely, D.A., Neilson, R.D., Shaw, S., Audette, R.J., Prior, M., Ashton, E. and Allison, E. (1997). Alberta farmstead water quality survey. Prepared for CAESA Water Quality Monitoring Committee. Alberta Agriculture, Food and Rural Development, Prairie Farm Rehabilitation Administration and Alberta Health. Edmonton, Alberta. 50 pp.

Fitzgerald, D., Chanasuk, D., Neilson, D., Kiely, D. and Audette, R. (2001). Farm well water in Alberta. Water Qual. Res. J. Can., 36(3): 565–585.

Fletcher, I.J., Woodward, A.J. and Henwood, N.G. (1991). Design and construction of an ion-exchange denitrification plant in south Staffordshire. J. Inst. Water Environ. Manage., 5(5): 566–572.

Fong, L.Y., Wong, F.W. and Chan, W.C. (1980). Do chronic urinary tract infections induce cancer in the rat fed nitrate and aminopyrine? IARC Sci. Publ., 31: 693–704.

Food Safety Network (2010). Nitrites/nitrates. In: Preservatives. Food Safety Network, University of Guelph, Guelph, Ontario. 3 pp. Available at: www.uoguelph.ca/foodsafetynetwork/preservatives

Forman, D., Al-Dabbagh, S. and Doll, R. (1985). Nitrates, nitrites and gastric cancer in Great Britain. Nature, 313(6004): 620–625.

Forman, D., Al-Dabbagh, S., Knight, T. and Doll, R. (1988). Nitrate exposure and the carcinogenic process. Ann. N. Y. Acad. Sci., 534: 597–603.

Forrest, F., Rodvang, J., Reedyk, S. and White, J. (2006). A survey of nutrients and major ions in shallow groundwater of Alberta's agricultural areas. Prepared for the Prairie Farm Rehabilitation Administration Rural Water Program, Project Number:4590-4-20-4. Alberta Agriculture, Food and Rural Development, Edmonton, Alberta. 116 pp.

Freedman, D.M., Cantor, K.P., Ward, M.H. and Helzlsouer, K.J. (2000). A case–control study of nitrate in drinking water and non-Hodgkin's lymphoma in Minnesota. Arch. Environ. Health, 55(5): 326–329.

Friedman, M.A. and Staub, J. (1976). Inhibition of mouse testicular DNA synthesis by mutagens and carcinogens as a potential simple mammalian assay for mutagenesis. Mutat. Res., 37(1): 67–76.

Friedman, M.A., Millar, G., Sengupta, M. and Epstein, S. (1972). Inhibition of mouse liver protein and nuclear RNA synthesis following combined oral treatment with sodium nitrite and dimethylamine or methylbenzylamine. Experientia, 28(1): 21–23.

Fristachi, A. and Rice, G. (2007). Estimation of the total daily oral intake of NDMA attributable to drinking water. J. Water Health, 5(3): 341–355.

Fritsch, P., de Saint Blanquat, G. and Klein, D. (1985). Excretion of nitrates and nitrites in saliva and bile in the dog. Food Chem. Toxicol., 23(7): 655–659.

Furukawa, F., Nishikawa, A., Ishiwata, H., Takahashi, M., Hayashi, Y. and Hirose, M. (2000). Renal carcinogenicity of concurrently administered fish meal and sodium nitrite in F344 rats. Jpn. J. Cancer Res., 91(2): 139–147.

Gangolli, S.D., Van Den Brandt, P.A., Feron, V.J., Janzowsky, C., Koeman, J.H., Speijers, G.J.A., Spiegelhalder, B., Walker, R. and Wishnok, J.S. (1994). Nitrate, nitrite and *N*-nitroso compounds. Eur. J. Pharmacol., 292(1): 1–38.

Garcia, H. and Lijinsky, W. (1973). Studies of the tumorigenic effect in feeding of nitrosamino acids and of low doses of amines and nitrite to rats. Z. Krebsforsch. Klin. Onkol. Cancer Res. Clin. Oncol., 79(3): 141–144.

Gatehouse, D.G. and Tweats, D.J. (1982). Mutagen formation after the addition of nitrite to normal human gastric juice. Carcinogenesis, 3(5): 597–598.

Gatseva, P. and Dimitrov, I. (1997). Population morbidity in a community with nitrate contamination of drinking water. Folia Med (Plovdiv), 39(4): 65–71.

Gatseva, P., Vladeva, S. and Pavlov, K. (1998). Incidence of goiter among children in a village with nitrate contamination of drinking water. Folia Med (Plovdiv), 40(3): 19–23.

Gatseva, P.D. and Argirova, M.D. (2008a). Iodine status and goitre prevalence in nitrate-exposed schoolchildren living in rural Bulgaria. Public Health, 122(5): 458–461.

Gatseva, P.D. and Argirova, M.D. (2008b). High-nitrate levels in drinking water may be a risk factor for thyroid dysfunction in children and pregnant women living in rural Bulgarian areas. Int. J. Hyg. Environ. Health, 211(5–6): 555–559.

Gelperin, A., Moses, V.K. and Bridger, C. (1975). Relationship of high nitrate community water supply to infant and fetal mortality. Ill. Med. J., 147: 155–157, 186.

George, M., Wiklund, L., Aastrup, M., Pousette, J., Thunholm, B., Saldeen, T., Wernroth, L., Zaren, B. and Holmberg, L. (2001). Incidence and geographical distribution of sudden infant death syndrome in relation to content of nitrate in drinking water and groundwater levels. Eur. J. Clin. Invest., 31(12): 1083–1094.

Globus, M. and Samuel, D. (1978). Effect of maternally administered sodium nitrite on hepatic erythropoiesis in fetal CD-1 mice. Teratology, 18(3): 367–378.

Gombar, C.T., Zubroff, J., Strahan, G.D. and Magee, P.N. (1983). Measurement of 7-methylguanine as an estimate of the amount of dimethylnitrosamine formed following administration of aminopyrine and nitrite to rats. Cancer Res., 43(11): 5077–5080.

Görsdorf S, Appel KE, Engeholm C, Obe G. (1990). Nitrogen dioxide induces DNA single-strand breaks in cultured Chinese hamster cells. Carcinogenesis. 11(1):37-41.

Goss, M.J., Barry, D.A.J. and Rudolph, D.L (1998). Contamination in Ontario farmstead domestic wells and its association with agriculture: 1. Results from drinking water wells. J Contam Hydrol, 32(3-4):267-293.

Gouvernement du Québec (2004). Étude sur la qualité de l'eau potable dans sept bassins versants en surplus de fumier et impacts potentiels sur la santé - caractérisation de l'eau souterraine dans les sept bassins versants. Available at : www.mddefp.gouv.qc.ca/eau/bassinversant/sept-bassins/index.htm

Gowans, W.J. (1990). Fatal methaemoglobinaemia in a dental nurse. A case of sodium nitrite poisoning. Br. J. Gen. Pract., 40(340): 470–471.

Granli, T., Dahl, R., Brodin, P. and Bockman, O.C. (1989). Nitrate and nitrite concentrations in human saliva: variations with salivary flow-rate. Food Chem. Toxicol., 27(10): 675–680.

Grant, D. and Butler, W.H. (1989). Chronic toxicity of sodium nitrite in the male F344 rat. Food Chem. Toxicol., 27(9): 565–571.

Green, L.C., Tannenbaum, S.R. and Fox, J.G. (1982). Nitrate in human and canine milk. N. Engl. J. Med., 306(22): 1367–1368.

Green, M. and Shelef, G. (1994). Treatment of nitrate contaminated groundwater. In: Groundwater contamination and control. U. Zoller (ed.). Marcel Dekker Inc., New York, New York.

Greenblatt, M. and Mirvish, S.S. (1973). Dose–response studies with concurrent administration of piperazine and sodium nitrite to strain A mice. J. Natl. Cancer Inst., 50(1): 119–124.

Greenblatt, M., Kommineni, V.R. and Lijinsky, W. (1973). Null effect of concurrent feeding of sodium nitrite and amino acids to MRC rats. J. Natl. Cancer Inst., 50(3): 799–802.

Greenblatt, M., Mirvish, S. and So, B.T. (1971). Nitrosamine studies: induction of lung adenomas by concurrent administration of sodium nitrite and secondary amines in swiss mice. J. Natl. Cancer Inst., 46(5): 1029–1034.

Greer, M.A., Goodman, G., Pleus, R.C. and Greer, S.E. (2002). Health effects assessment for environmental perchlorate contamination: the dose response for inhibition of thyroidal radioiodine uptake in humans. Environ. Health Perspect., 110(9): 927–937.

Gros, H., Schnoor, G. and Rutten, P. (1986). Nitrate removal from groundwater by autotrophic microorganisms. Water Supply, 4: 11–21.

Gulis, G., Czompolyova, M. and Cerhan, J.R. (2002). An ecologic study of nitrate in municipal drinking water and cancer incidence in Trnava District, Slovakia. Environ. Res., 88(3): 182–187.

Gupta, S.K., Gupta, R.C., Seth, A.K., Gupta, A.B., Bassin, J.K. and Gupta, A. (1999). Adaptation of cytochrome-b5 reductase activity and methaemoglobinaemia in areas with a high nitrate concentration in drinking-water. Bull. World Health Organ., 77(9): 749–753.

Guter, G.A. (1981). Removal of nitrate from contaminated water supplies for public use. United States Environmental Protection Agency, Cincinnati, Ohio.

Guter, G.A. (1995). Nitrate removal from contaminated groundwater by anion exchange. Ion Exchange Technology. A.K. Sengupta, Ed., Technomic Publishing Company.

Hampel, R., Zollner, H., Glass, A. and Schonebeck, R. (2003). [No influence of urinary nitrate excretion on the goitre prevalence in Germany.] Med. Klin. (Munich), 98(10): 547–551 (in German).

Hansen, P.S., Brix, T.H., Sorensen, T.I., Kyvik, K.O. and Hegedus, L. (2004). Major genetic influence on the regulation of the pituitary-thyroid axis: A study of healthy danish twins. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 89(3):1181-7. [cited in Miller et al., 2009].

Hanukoglu, A. and Danon, P.N. (1996). Endogenous methemoglobinemia associated with diarrheal disease in infancy. J. Pediatr. Gastroenterol. Nutr., 23: 1–7.

Harrington, G.W., Noguera, D.R., Kandou, A.I. and Vanhoven, D.J. (2002). Pilot-scale evaluation of nitrification control strategies. J. Am. Water Works Assoc., 94(11): 78–89.

Hawkes, C.H., Cavanagh, J.B., Darling, J.L., Watkins, B.A. and Thomas, D.G.T. (1992). Chronic low-dose exposure of sodium nitrite in VM-strain mice: central nervous system changes. Hum. Exp. Toxicol., 11(4): 279–281.

Health Canada (2003a). Concentrations of nitrosamines, nitrite, and nitrate in food from Total Diet Study in Ottawa (ON), 2000. Ottawa, Ontario. Available at www.hc-sc.gc.ca/fn-an/surveill/total-diet/concentration/nitrosamine_conc_ottawa2000-eng.php

Health Canada (2003b). Concentrations of nitrosamines, nitrite, and nitrate in food from Total Diet Study in St. John's (NF), 2001. St. John's, Newfoundland. Available at www.hc-sc.gc.ca/fn-an/surveill/total-diet/concentration/nitrosamine_conc_ottawa2000-eng.php

Health Canada (2011). Guidelines for Canadian drinking water quality: Guideline technical document—*N*-nitrosodimethylamine. Water, Air and Climate Change Bureau, Healthy Environments and Consumer Safety Branch, Health Canada, Ottawa, Ontario. Available at: www.hc-sc.gc.ca/ewh-semt/pubs/water-eau/ndma/index-eng.php

Health Canada (2012). Personal communication from Anca-Maria Tugulea. Environmental health science and research bureau, Healthy Environments and Consumer Safety Branch, Health Canada, Ottawa, Ontario.

Health Canada (2013). Guidelines for Canadian drinking water quality: Guideline technical document—Ammonia. Water, Air and Climate Change Bureau, Healthy Environments and Consumer Safety Branch, Health Canada,

Ottawa, Ontario. (Catalogue No H144-13/5-2013E-PDF).Available at www.hc-sc.gc.ca/ewh-semt/pubs/water-eau/index-eng.php#tech_doc

Hegesh, E. and Shiloah, J. (1982). Blood nitrates and infantile methemoglobinemia. Clin. Chim. Acta, 125(2): 107–115.

Heindel, J.J., Chapin, R.E., Gulati, D.K., George, J.D., Price, C.J., Marr, M.C., Myers, C.B., Barnes, L.H., Fail, P.A., Grizzle, T.B., Schwetz B.A. and Yang R.S.H. (1994). Assessment of the reproductive and developmental toxicity of pesticide/fertilizer mixtures based on confirmed pesticide contamination in California and Iowa groundwater. Fundam. Appl. Toxicol., 22(4): 605–621.

Hell, F., Lahnsteiner, J., Frischherz, H. and Baumgartner, G. (1998). Experience with full-scale electrodialysis for nitrate and hardness removal. Desalination, 117: 173–180.

Helser, M.A., Hotchkiss, J.H. and Roe, D.A. (1992). Influence of fruit and vegetable juices on the endogenous formation of *N*-nitrosoproline and *N*-nitrosothiazolidine-4-carboxylic acid in humans on controlled diets. Carcinogenesis, 13(12): 2277–2280.

Heyland, A. and Moroz, L.L. (2005). Cross-kingdom hormonal signaling: An insight from thyroid hormone functions in marine larvae. J Exp Biol 208(Pt 23):4355-61. [cited in Miller et al., 2009].

Hill, C.P. and Arweiler, S. Assessment and operational responses to nitrification episodes. In: Manual of Water Supply Practices M56: Fundamentals and control of nitrification in chloraminated drinking water distribution systems. American Water Works Association, Denver, Colorado.

Hirose, M., Tanaka, H., Takahashi, S., Futakuchi, M., Fukushima, S. and Ito, N. (1993). Effects of sodium nitrite and catechol, 3-methoxycatechol, or butylated hydroxyanisole in combination in a rat multiorgan carcinogenesis model. Cancer Res., 53(1): 32–37.

Höll, W.H. and Hagen, K. (2002). Partial demineralisation of drinking water using carbon dioxide regenerated ion exchangers. Water Sci. Technol. Water Supply, 2(1): 57–62.

Howdeshell, K.L. (2002). A model of the development of the brain as a construct of the thyroid system. Environ. Health Perspect., 110(Suppl. 3): 337–348.

Hsu, J.D., Hsu, C.L., Chou, F.P., Wen, P.H. and Wang, C.J. (1997). Potential effect of sodium nitrite on the expression of nuclear proto-oncogenes during 2-acetyl aminofluorene-induced hepatocarcinogenesis in rats. Chem. Biol. Interact., 108(1–2): 1–18.

Hunault, C.C., Lambers, A.C., Mensinga, T.T., van Isselt, J.W., Koppeschaar, H.P. and Meulenbelt, J. (2007). Effects of sub-chronic nitrate exposure on the thyroidal function in humans. Toxicol. Lett., 175(1–3): 64–70.

Huncharek, M. and Kupelnick, B. (2004). A meta-analysis of maternal cured meat consumption during pregnancy and the risk of childhood brain tumors. Neuroepidemiology, 23(1–2): 78–84.

Huncharek, M., Kupelnick, B. and Wheeler, L. (2003). Dietary cured meat and the risk of adult glioma: a meta-analysis of nine observational studies. J. Environ. Pathol. Toxicol. Oncol., 22(2): 129–137.

IARC (1978). Monographs on the evaluation of the carcinogenic risk of chemicals to humans, vol. 17, Some N-nitroso Compounds. International Agency for Research on Cancer, Lyon, France.

IARC (1987). Overall evaluation of carcinogenicity: an updating of IARC monographs volumes 1–42. International Agency for Research on Cancer, Lyon (IARC Monographs on the Evaluation of the Carcinogenic Risks to Humans, Supplement 7).

IARC (2010). Ingested nitrate and nitrite and cyanobacterial peptide toxins. International Agency for Research on Cancer, Lyon. 464 pp. (IARC Monographs on the Evaluation of Carcinogenic Risks to Humans, Volume 94).

Ilnitsky, A.P. and Kolpakova, A.S. (1997). The enhancing effect of sodium nitrite on virus-induced leukemia in mice. Cancer Detect. Prev., 21(4): 312–318.

Inai, K., Aoki, Y. and Tokuoka, S. (1979). Chronic toxicity of sodium nitrite in mice, with reference to its tumorigenicity. Gann, 70(2): 203–208.

Inui, N., Nishi, Y. and Hasegawa, M.M. (1980). Induction of 8-azaguanine-resistant mutation and neoplastic transformation of hamster embryonic cells by coadministration of sodium nitrite and aminopyrine. J. Cancer Res. Clin. Oncol., 97(2): 119–128.

Inui, N., Nishi, Y., Taketomi, M. and Mori, M (1979). Transplacental action of sodium nitrite on embryonic cells of Syrian golden hamster. Mutat. Res., 66: 149–158.

Inui, N., Nishi, Y., Taketomi, M. and Yamada, T. (1978). A short-term, simple method for detection of N-nitrosocompounds produced from sodium nitrite and morpholine in stomach. Biochem. Biophys. Res. Commun., 81(2): 310–314.

IPCS. (2002). N-Nitrosodimethylamine. International Programme on Chemical Safety, World Health Organization, Geneva (Concise International Chemical Assessment Document 38) Available at: www.inchem.org/documents/cicads/cicads/cicad38.htm).

Ishidate, M., Jr., Sofuni, T., Yoshikawa, K., Hayashi, M., Nohmi, T., Sawada, M. and Matsuoka, A. (1984). Primary mutagenicity screening of food additives currently used in Japan. Food Chem. Toxicol., 22: 623–636.

Ishiguro, K., Zhu, Y.L., Shyam, K., Penketh, P.G., Baumann, R.P. and Sartorelli, A.C. (2010). Quantitative relationship between guanine O^6-alkyl lesions produced by onrigin and tumor resistance by O^6-alkylguanine-DNA alkyltransferase. Biochem. Pharmacol., 80(9): 1317–1325.

Jahreis, G., Hesse, V., Rohde, W., Prange, H. and Zwacka, G. (1991). Nitrate-induced hypothyroidism is associated with a reduced concentration of growth hormone-releasing factor in hypothalamic tissue of rats. Exp. Clin. Endocrinol., 97(1): 109–112.

Jakszyn, P., Bingham, S., Pera, G., Agudo, A., Luben, R., Welch, A., Boeing, H., Del Giudice, G., Palli, D., Saieva, C., Krogh, V., Sacerdote, C., Tumino, R., Panico, S., Berglund, G., Simán, H., Hallmans, G., Sanchez, M.J., Larrañaga, N., Barricarte, A., Chirlaque, M.D., Quirós, J.R., Key, T.J., Allen, N., Lund, E., Carneiro, F., Linseisen, J., Nagel, G., Overvad, K., Tjonneland, A., Olsen, A., Bueno-de-Mesquita, H.B., Ocké, M.O., Peeters, P.H., Numans, M.E., Clavel-Chapelon, F., Trichopoulou, A., Fenger, C., Stenling, R., Ferrari, P., Jenab, M., Norat, T., Riboli, E. and Gonzalez, C.A. (2006). Endogenous versus exogenous exposure to N-nitroso compounds and gastric cancer risk in the European Prospective Investigation into Cancer and Nutrition (EPIC-EURGAST) study. Carcinogenesis, 27(7): 1497–1501.

Janssen, L.H.J.M., Visser, H. and Romer, F.G. (1989). Analysis of large scale sulphate, nitrate, chloride and ammonium concentrations in the Netherlands using an aerosol measuring network. Atmos. Environ., 23(2): 2783–2796.

Johnson, C. and Kross, B. (1990). Continuing importance of nitrate contamination of groundwater and wells in rural areas. Am. J. Ind. Med., 18: 449–456.

Jones, C.S., Hill, D. and Brand, G. (2007). Use a multifaceted approach to manage high source-water nitrate. Opflow, June 2007, American Water Works Association. pp. 20–22.

Joossens, J.V., Hill, M.J., Elliott, P., Stamler, R., Stamler, J., Lesaffre, E., Dyer, A., Nichols, R. and Kesteloot, H. (1996). Dietary salt, nitrate and stomach cancer mortality in 24 countries. European Cancer Prevention (ECP) and the INTERSALT Cooperative Research Group. Int. J. Epidemiol., 25(3): 494–504.

Kamm, J.J., Dashman, T., Conney, A.H. and Burns, J.J. (1975). Effect of ascorbic acid on amine-nitrite toxicity. Ann. N. Y. Acad. Sci., 258: 169–174.

Kang, J.G., Kim, S.H. and Ahn, T.Y. (2006). Bacterial diversity in the human saliva from different ages. J. Microbiol., 44(5): 572–576.

Kapoor, A. and Viraraghavan, T. (1997). Nitrate removal from drinking water—review. J. Environ. Eng., 123(4): 317–380.

Keeney, D.R.and Hatfield, J.L (2008).The nitrogen cycle, historical perspective, and current and potential future concerns. In: Nitrogen in the Environment: Sources, Problems, and Management..J.L Hatfield and R.F Follett (eds.). Elsevier Inc.

Kelley, S.T., Oehme, F.W. and Hoffman, S.B. (1974). Effect of chronic dietary nitrates on canine thyroid function. Toxicol. Appl. Pharmacol., 27(1): 200–203.

Kemper, J.M., Westerhoff, P., Dotson, A., and Mitch, W.A. (2009) Nitrosamine, dimethylnitramine, and chloropicring formation during strong base anion-exchange treatment. Environ. Sci. Technol. 43(2):466-472.

Kirk, A.B. (2006). Environmental perchlorate: why it matters. Anal. Chim. Acta, 567(1): 4–12.

Kirmeyer, G.J., Martel, K., Thompson, G., Radder, L., Klement, W., LeChevallier, M., Baribeaa, H. and Flores, A. (2004). Optimizing chloramine treatment. American Water Works Research Foundation and American Water Works Association, Denver, Colorado.

Kirmeyer, G.J., Odell, L.H., Jacangelo, J., Wilczak, A. and Wolfe, R. (1995). Nitrification occurrence and control in chloraminated water systems. American Water Works Research Foundation and American Water Works Association, Denver, Colorado.

Kjartanson, K. (1986). Memorandum to Dr. P. Toft, Department of National Health and Welfare, dated 2 June, from K. Kjartanson, Environmental Management, Manitoba Environment and Workplace Safety and Health.

Knekt, P., Järvinen, R., Dich, J. and Hakulinen, T. (1999). Risk of colorectal and other gastro-intestinal cancers after exposure to nitrate, nitrite and *N*-nitroso compounds: a follow-up study. Int. J. Cancer, 80(6): 852–856.

Knight, T.M., Forman, D., Al-Dabbagh, S.A. and Doll, R. (1987). Estimation of dietary intake of nitrate and nitrite in Great Britain. Food Chem. Toxicol., 25(4): 277–285.

Knobeloch, L., Salna, B., Hogan, A., Postle, J. and Anderson, H. (2000). Blue babies and nitrate-contaminated well water. Environ. Health Perspect., 108(7): 675–678.

Kociba, R.J. and Sleight, S.D. (1970). Nitrite toxicosis in the ascorbic acid-deficient guinea pig. Toxicol. Appl. Pharmacol., 16(2): 424–429.

Kodama, F., Umeda, M. and Tsutsui, T. (1976). Mutagenic effect of sodium nitrite on cultured mouse cells. Mutat. Res., 40: 119–124.

Kodama, K., Sumii, K., Kawano, M., Kido, T., Nojima, K., Sumii, M., Haruma, K., Yoshihara, M. and Chayama, K. (2003). Gastric juice nitrite and vitamin C in patients with gastric cancer and atrophic gastritis: is low acidity solely responsible for cancer risk? Eur. J. Gastroenterol. Hepatol., 15(9): 987–993.

Koestner, A., Denlinger, R.H. and Wechsler ,W. (1975). Induction of neurogenic and lymphoid neoplasms by the feeding of threshold levels of methyl and ethylnitrosourea precursors to adult rats. Food Cosmet Toxicol 13(6):605-609 [Online 26 June 2010].

Kors, L.J., Moorman, J.H.N., Wind, A.P.M. and van der Hoek, J.P. (1998). Nitrification and low temperature in a raw water reservoir and rapid sand filters. Water Sci. Technol., 37(2): 169-176.

Kortboyer, J.M., Schothorst, R.C., Zeilmaker, M.J and Meulenbelt, J. (1998). Intravenous administration of sodium nitrite to healthy volunteers: a single ascending dose study. National Institute for Public Health and the Environment. RIVM Report 235802 011, Bilthoven, Netherlands.

Kortboyer, J.M., Ollling, M., Zeilmaker, M.J., Slob, W., Boink, A.B.T.J., Schothorst, R.C., Sips, A.J.A.M. and Meulenbelt, J. (1997). The oral bioavailability of sodium nitrite investigated in healthy adult volunteers. National Institute for Public Health and the Environment. RIVM Report No. 235802 007. Bilthoven, Netherlands.

Kostraba, J.N., Gay, E.C., Rewers, M. and Hamman, R.F. (1992). Nitrate levels in community drinking waters and risk of IDDM: an ecological analysis. Diabetes Care, 15(11): 1505–1508.

Kowalski, B., Miller, C.T. and Sen, N.P. (1980). Studies on the *in vivo* formation of nitrosamines in rats and humans after ingestion of various meals. IARC Sci. Publ., 31: 609–617.

Krishna Murthy, A.S., Baker, J.R., Smith, E.R. and Zepp, E. (1979). Neoplasms in rats and mice fed butylurea and sodium nitrite separately and in combination. Int. J. Cancer, 23(2): 253–259.

Krul, C.A.M., Zeilmaker, M.J., Schothorst, R.C. and Havenaar, R. (2004). Intragastric formation and modulation of *N*-nitrosodimethylamine in a dynamic *in vitro* gastrointestinal model under human physiological conditions. Food Chem. Toxicol., 42(1): 51–63.

Kyrtopoulos, S.A., Pignatelli, B., Karkanias, G., Golematis, B. and Esteve, J. (1991). Studies in gastric carcinogenesis. V. The effects of ascorbic acid on *N*-nitroso compound formation in human gastric juice *in vivo* and *in vitro*. Carcinogenesis, 12(8): 1371–1376.

L'hirondel, J. and L'hirondel, J.-L. (2002). Nitrate and man: toxic, harmless or beneficial? CABI Publishing. Wallingford, Oxon. 168 pp.

Lauch, R.P. and Guter, G.A. (1986). Ion exchange for the removal of nitrate from well water. J. Am. Water Works Assoc., 78(5): 83–88.

Law, G., Parslow, R., McKinney, P. and Cartwright, R. (1999). Non-Hodgkin's lymphoma and nitrate in drinking water: a study in Yorkshire, United Kingdom. J. Epidemiol. Community Health, 53(6): 383–384.

Leaf, C.D., Wishnok, J.S. and Tannenbaum, S.R. (1989). Mechanisms of endogenous nitrosation. Cancer Surv., 8(2): 323–334.

Lehman, S.G., Badruzzaman, M., Adham, S.S., Roberts, D.J., Clifford, D.A., Zuo, G., Patel, A., Rittmann, B.E., Ahn, C. and Van Ginkel, S. (2010). Biological destruction of perchlorate and nitrate in ion exchanges concentrate. Water Research Foundation, Denver, Colorado.

Levallois, P., Thériault, M., Rouffignat, J., Tessier, S., Landry, R., Ayotte, P., Girard, M., Gingras, S., Gauvin, D. and Chiasson, C. (1998). Groundwater contamination by nitrates associated with intensive potato culture in Québec. Sci. Total Environ., 217:91-101.

Levallois, P., Ayotte, P., Van Maanen, J.M.S., Desrosiers, T., Gingras, S., Dallinga, J.W., Vermeer, I.T., Zee, J. and Poirier, G. (2000). Excretion of volatile nitrosamines in a rural population in relation to food and drinking water consumption. Food Chem. Toxicol., 38(11): 1013–1019.

Licht, W.R. and Deen, W.M. (1988). Theoretical model for predicting rates of nitrosamine and nitrosamide formation in the human stomach. Carcinogenesis, 9(12): 2227–2237.

Liebscher, H., Hii, B. and McNaughton, D. (1992). Nitrate and pesticide contamination of ground water in the Abbotsford aquifer, southwestern British Columbia. Inland Waters Directorate, Environment Canada, Vancouver, B.C.

Lijinsky, W. (1984). Induction of tumours in rats by feeding nitrosatable amines together with sodium nitrite. Food Chem. Toxicol., 22(9): 715–720.

Lijinsky, W. and Greenblatt, M. (1972). Carcinogen dimethylnitrosamine produced *in vivo* from nitrite and aminopyrine. Nat. New Biol., 236(67): 177–178.

Lijinsky, W. and Reuber, M.D. (1980). Tumours induced in Fischer 344 rats by the feeding of disulfiram together with sodium nitrite. Food Cosmet. Toxicol., 18(1): 85–87.

Lijinsky, W. and Taylor, H.W. (1977). Feeding tests in rats on mixtures of nitrite with secondary and tertiary amines of environmental importance. Food Cosmet. Toxicol., 15(4): 269–274.

Lijinsky, W., Greenblatt, M. and Kommineni, C. (1973a). Brief communication: Feeding studies of nitrilotriacetic acid and derivatives in rats. J. Natl. Cancer Inst., 50(4): 1061–1063.

Lijinsky, W., Taylor, H.W., Snyder, C. and Nettesheim, P. (1973b). Malignant tumours of liver and lung in rats fed aminopyrine or heptamethyleneimine together with nitrite. Nature, 244(5412): 176–178.

Lijinsky, W., Kovatch, R. and Riggs, C.W. (1983). Altered incidences of hepatic and hemopoietic neoplasms in F344 rats fed sodium nitrite. Carcinogenesis, 4(9):1189–1191.

Lin, J.K. and Ho, Y.S. (1992). Hepatotoxicity and hepatocarcinogenicity in rats fed squid with or without exogenous nitrite. Food Chem. Toxicol., 30(8): 695–702.

Lin, S.H. and Chang, L.W. (1996) Removal of nitrogenous compounds from aqueous solution by ozonation and ion exchange. Wat. Res 30(8):1851-1857.

Lindsey, B.D., and Rupert, M.G., (2012). Methods for evaluating temporal groundwater quality data and results of decadal-scale changes in chloride, dissolved solids, and nitrate concentrations in groundwater in the United States, 1988–2010: U.S. Geological Survey Scientific Investigations Report 2012–5049, 46 pp.

Liu, X. and Clifford, D.A. (1996). Ion exchange with denitrified brine reuse. J. Am. Water Works Assoc., 88(11): 88–99.

Lu, N., Gao, N-Y., Deng, Y. and Li, Q-S. (2009). Nitrite formation during low pressure ultraviolet lamp irradiation of nitrate. Water Sci. Technol., 60(6): 1393–1400.

Luca, D., Luca, V., Cotor, F. and Răileanu, L. (1987). *In vivo* and *in vitro* cytogenetic damage induced by sodium nitrite. Mutat. Res., 189: 333–339.

Luk, G.K. and Au-Yeung, W.C. (2002). Experimental investigation on the chemical reduction of nitrate from groundwater. Adv. Environ. Res., 6: 441–453.

Lundberg, J.O., Weitzberg, E. and Gladwin, M.T. (2008). The nitrate–nitrite–nitric oxide pathway in physiology and therapeutics. Nat. Rev. Drug Discov., 7(2): 156–167.

Lundberg, J.O., Weitzberg, E., Cole, J.A. and Benjamin, N. (2004). Nitrate, bacteria and human health. Nat. Rev. Microbiol., 2(7): 593–602.

Mackerness, C.W., Leach, S.A., Thompson, M.H. and Hill, M.J. (1989). The inhibition of bacterially mediated *N*-nitrosation by vitamin C: relevance to the inhibition of endogenous *N*-nitrosation in the achlorhydric stomach. Carcinogenesis, 10(2): 397–399.

Maekawa, A., Ogiu, T., Onodera, H., Furuta, K., Matsuoka, C., Ohno, Y. and Odashima, S. (1982). Carcinogenicity studies of sodium nitrite and sodium nitrate in F-344 rats. Food Chem. Toxicol., 20(1): 25–33.

Magee, P.N. and Barnes, J.M. (1967). Carcinogenic nitroso compounds. Adv. Cancer Res., 10: 163–246.

Manassaram, D.M., Backer, L.C. and Moll, D.M. (2006). A review of nitrates in drinking water: maternal exposure and adverse reproductive and developmental outcomes. Environ. Health Perspect., 114(3): 320–327.

Manitoba Conservation and Water Stewardship, (2011a). Personal communication from Kim Philip.

Marquardt, H., Rufino, F. and Weisburger, J.H. (1977). On the aetiology of gastric cancer: mutagenicity of food extracts after incubation with nitrite. Food Cosmet. Toxicol., 15(2): 97–100.

Mascher, F. and Marth, E. (1993). Metabolism and effect of nitrates. Cent. Eur. J. Public Health, 1(1): 49–52.

Mateju, V., Cizinska, S., Krejci, J. and Janoch, T. (1992). Biological water denitrification—a review. Enzyme Microb. Technol., 14: 170–183.

Matos, C.T., Velizarov, S., Crespo, J.G. and Reis, M.A.M. (2005). Removal of bromate, perchlorate, and nitrate from drinking water in an ion exchange membrane bioreactor. Water Supply, 5(4): 9–14.

Mayne, S.T., Risch, H.A., Dubrow, R., Chow, W.H., Gammon, M.D., Vaughan, T.L., Farrow, D.C., Schoenberg, J.B., Stanford, J.L., Ahsan, H., West, A.B., Rotterdam, H., Blot, W.J. and Fraumeni, J.F., Jr. (2001). Nutrient intake and risk of subtypes of esophageal and gastric cancer. Cancer Epidemiol. Biomarkers Prev., 10(10): 1055–1062.

McAdam, E.J. and Judd, S.J. (2006). A review of membrane bioreactor potential for nitrate removal from drinking water. Desalination, 196: 135–148.

McColl, K.E.L. (2007). Hostile environment of the gastroesophageal junction. J. Clin. Gastroenterol., 41(Suppl. 2): S102–S107.

McElroy, J.A., Trentham-Dietz, A., Gangnon, R.E., Hampton, J.M., Bersch, A.J., Kanarek, M.S. and Newcomb, P.A. (2008). Nitrogen-nitrate exposure from drinking water and colorectal cancer risk for rural women in Wisconsin, USA. J. Water Health, 6(3): 399–409.

McGreer, E.R. and Belzer, W. (1999). Contaminant sources. In: Health of the Fraser River aquatic ecosystem. Vol. 1. A synthesis of research conducted under the Fraser River Action Plan. C. Gray and T. Tuominen (eds.). Environment Canada, Vancouver, B.C. pp. 7–22 (Publication No. DOE FRAP 1998-11).

McKinney, P.A., Parslow, R. and Bodansky, H.J. (1999). Nitrate exposure and childhood diabetes. In: Managing risks of nitrates to humans and the environment. W.S. Wilson, A.S. Ball and R.H. Hinton (eds.). Royal Society of Chemistry, Cambridge. pp. 327–339.

Mensinga, T.T., Speijers, G.J.A. and Meulenbelt, J. (2003). Health implications of exposure to environmental nitrogenous compounds. Toxicol. Rev., 22(1): 41–51.

Meyer, K.J., Swaim, P.D., Bellamy, W.D., Rittmann, B.E. and Tang. Y. (2010). Biological and ion exchange nitrate removal evaluation. Water Research Foundation, Denver, Colorado (Report No. 4131).

Michaud, D.S., Holick, C.N., Batchelor, T.T., Giovannucci, E. and Hunter, D.J. (2009). Prospective study of meat intake and dietary nitrates, nitrites, and nitrosamines and risk of adult glioma. Am. J. Clin. Nutr., 90(3): 570–577.

Miller, M.D., Crofton, K.M., Rice, D.C., Zoeller, R.T. (2009). Thyroid-disrupting chemicals: Interpreting upstream biomarkers of adverse outcomes. Environ Health Perspect 117(7):1033-41.

Miller, C.T. (1984). Unscheduled DNA synthesis in human leucocytes after a fish (amine source) meal with or without salad (nitrite source). IARC Sci. Publ., 57: 609–613.

Ministère du Développement durable, de l'Environnement, de la faune et des Parcs du Québec, 2010. Personal communication from Caroline Robert

Mirvish, S.S. (1975a). Blocking the formation of *N*-nitroso compounds with ascorbic acid *in vitro* and *in vivo*. Ann. N. Y. Acad. Sci., 258: 175–180.

Mirvish, S.S. (1975b). Formation of *N*-nitroso compounds: chemistry, kinetics, and *in vivo* occurrence. Toxicol. Appl. Pharmacol., 31(3): 325–351.

Mirvish, S.S. (1983). The etiology of gastric cancer. Intragastric nitrosamide formation and other theories. J. Natl. Cancer Inst., 71(3): 629–647.

Mirvish, S.S. (1986). Effects of vitamins C and E on *N*-nitroso compound formation, carcinogenesis, and cancer. Cancer, 58(Suppl. 8): 1842–1850.

Mirvish, S.S. (1991). The significance for human health of nitrate, nitrite and *N*-nitroso compounds. In: Nitrate contamination: exposure, consequence, and control. I. Bogárdi, R.D. Kuzelka and W.G. Ennenga (eds.). Springer-Verlag, New York, New York. pp. 253–266.

Mirvish, S.S. (1994). Experimental evidence for inhibition of *N*-nitroso compound formation as a factor in the negative correlation between vitamin C consumption and the incidence of certain cancers. Cancer Res., 54(Suppl. 7): 1948s–1951s.

Mirvish, S.S. (1995). Role of *N*-nitroso compounds (NOC) and *N*-nitrosation in etiology of gastric, esophageal, nasopharyngeal and bladder cancer and contribution to cancer of known exposures to NOC. Cancer Lett., 93(1): 17–48.

Mirvish, S.S. (1996). Inhibition by vitamins C and E of *in vivo* nitrosation and vitamin C occurrence in the stomach. Eur. J. Cancer Prev., 5(Suppl. 1): 131–136.

Mirvish, S.S., Greenblatt, M. and Kommineni, V.R. (1972). Nitrosamide formation *in vivo*: induction of lung adenomas in Swiss mice by concurrent feeding of nitrite and methylurea or ethylurea. J. Natl. Cancer Inst., 48(5): 1311–1315.

Mirvish, S.S., Cardesa, A., Wallcave, L. and Shubik, P. (1975). Induction of mouse lung adenomas by amines or ureas plus nitrite and by *N*-nitroso compounds: effect of ascorbate, gallic acid, thiocyanate, and caffeine. J. Natl. Cancer Inst., 55(3): 633–636.

Mirvish, S.S., Pelfrene, A.F., Garcia, H. and Shubik, P. (1976). Effect of sodium ascorbate on tumor induction in rats treated with morpholine and sodium nitrite, and with nitrosomorpholine. Cancer Lett., 2(2): 101–108.

Mirvish, S.S., Bulay, O., Runge, R.G. and Patil, K. (1980). Study of the carcinogenicity of large doses of dimethylnitramine, *N*-nitroso-L-proline, and sodium nitrite administered in drinking water to rats. J. Natl. Cancer Inst., 64(6): 1435–1442.

Mirvish, S.S., Salmasi, S., Cohen, S.M., Patil, K. and Mahboubi, E. (1983). Liver and forestomach tumors and other forestomach lesions in rats treated with morpholine and sodium nitrite, with and without sodium ascorbate. J. Natl. Cancer Inst., 71(1): 81–85.

Mirvish, S.S., Grandjean, A.C., Moller, H., Fike, S., Maynard, T., Jones, L., Rosinsky, S. and Nie, G. (1992). *N*-Nitrosoproline excretion by rural Nebraskans drinking water of varied nitrate content. Cancer Epidemiol. Biomarkers Prev., 1(6): 455–461.

Mirvish, S.S., Grandjean, A.C., Reimers, K.J., Connelly, B.J., Chen, S.C., Gallagher, J., Rosinsky, S., Nie, G., Tuatoo, H., Payne, S., Hinman, C. and Ruby, E. I. (1995). Dosing time with ascorbic acid and nitrate, gum and tobacco chewing, fasting, and other factors affecting *N*-nitrosoproline formation in healthy subjects taking proline with a standard meal. Cancer Epidemiol. Biomarkers Prev., 4(7): 775–783.

Mirvish, S.S., Reimers, K.J., Kutler, B., Chen, S.C., Haorah, J., Morris, C.R., Grandjean, A.C. and Lyden, E.R. (2000). Nitrate and nitrite concentrations in human saliva for men and women at different ages and times of the day and their consistency over time. Eur. J. Cancer Prev., 9(5): 335–342.

Mirvish, S.S., Davis, M.E., Lisowyj, M.P. and Gaikwad, N.W. (2008). Effect of feeding nitrite, ascorbate, hemin, and omeprazole on excretion of fecal total apparent *N*-nitroso compounds in mice. Chem. Res. Toxicol., 21(12): 2344–2351.

Mitch, W.A., Sharp, J.O., Trussell, R.R., Valentine, R.L., Alvarez-Cohen, L. and Sedlak, D.L. (2003). N-Nitrosodimethylamine (NDMA) as a drinking water contaminant: a review. Environ. Eng. Sci., 20(5):389-404.

Mokhtar, N.M., el-Aaser, A.A., el-Bolkainy, M.N., Ibrahim, H.A., Badr El-Din, N.K. and Moharram, N.Z. (1988). Effect of soybean feeding on experimental carcinogenesis—III. Carcinogenicity of nitrite and dibutylamine in mice: A histopathological study. Eur. J. Cancer Clin. Oncol., 24(3): 403–411.

Moller, H., Landt, J., Pedersen, E., Jensen, P., Autrup, H. and Jensen, O.M. (1989). Endogenous nitrosation in relation to nitrate exposure from drinking water and diet in a Danish rural population. Cancer Res., 49(11): 3117–3121.

Moltchanova, E., Rytkonen, M., Kousa, A., Taskinen, O., Tuomilehto, J. and Karvonen, M. (2004). Zinc and nitrate in the ground water and the incidence of Type 1 diabetes in Finland. Diabet. Med., 21: 256–261.

Montesano, R. (1976). Carcinogenicity of *N*-nitroso compounds. Ann. Nutr. Aliment., 30(5–6): 867–871.

Montesano, R. and Bartsch, H. (1976). Mutagenic and carcinogenic *N*-nitroso compounds: possible environmental hazards. Mutat. Res., 32(3–4): 179–228.

Montesano, R. and Magee, P.N. (1971). Evidence of formation of *N*-methyl-*N*-nitrosourea in rats given *N*-methylurea and sodium nitrite. Int. J. Cancer, 7(2): 249–255.

Morales-Suarez-Varela, M.M., Llopis-Gonzalez, A. and Tejerizo-Perez, M.L. (1995). Impact of nitrates in drinking water on cancer mortality in Valencia, Spain. Eur. J. Epidemiol., 11(1): 15–21.

Mueller, B.A., Newton, K., Holly, E.A. and Preston-Martin, S. (2001). Residential water source and the risk of childhood brain tumors. Environ. Health Perspect., 109(6): 551–556.

Mueller, B.A., Nielsen, S.S., Preston-Martin, S., Holly, E.A., Cordier, S., Filippini, G., Peris-Bonet, R. and Choi, N.W. (2004). Household water source and the risk of childhood brain tumours: results of the SEARCH International Brain Tumor Study. Int. J. Epidemiol., 33(6): 1209–1216.

Mukhopadhyay, S., Ghosh, D., Chatterjee, A., Sinha, S., Tripathy, S. and Chandra, A.K. (2005). Evaluation of possible goitrogenic and anti-thyroidal effect of nitrate, a potential environmental pollutant. Indian J. Physiol. Pharmacol., 49(3): 284–288.

Murphy, R.S., Sadler, C.J. and Blot, W.J. (1998). Trends in cured meat consumption in relation to childhood and adult brain cancer in the united states. Food Control, 9(5): 299–305.

MWH (2005). Water treatment principles and design. 2nd edition. John Wiley & Sons, New York, New York.

Nakamura, S.I., Oda, Y., Shimada, T., Oki, I. and Sugimoto, K. (1987). SOS-inducing activity of chemical carcinogens and mutagens in *Salmonella typhimurium* TA1535/pSK1002: examination with 151 chemicals. Mutat. Res., 192: 239–246.

NAS (1981). The health effects of nitrate, nitrite, and *N*-nitroso compounds: part 1 of a 2-part study. Prepared by the Committee on Nitrite and Alternative Curing Agents in Food, National Academy of Sciences. National Academy Press, Washington, DC.

Newberne, P.M. (1979). Nitrite promotes lymphoma incidence in rats. Science, 204(4397): 1079–1081.

Newfoundland and Labrador Department of Environment and Conservation (2010). Personal communication from Haseen Khan. February.

Niagolova, N., McElmurry, S.P., Voice, T.C., Long, D.T., Petropoulos, E.A., Havezov, I., Chou, K. and Ganev, V. (2005). Nitrogen species in drinking water indicate potential exposure pathway for Balkan endemic nephropathy. Environ. Pollut., 134(2): 229–237.

Nolan, B., Hitt, K. and Ruddy, B. (2002). Probability of nitrate concentration of recently recharged groundwater in the conterminous United States. Environ. Sci. Technol., 36(1): 2138.

Nova Scotia Environment, (2010). Personal communication from Judy MacDonald. February.

NRC (1995). Nitrate and nitrite in drinking water. Prepared by the Subcommittee on Nitrate and Nitrite in Drinking Water, Committee on Toxicology, National Research Council. National Academy Press, Washington, DC.

NSDH (1982). Chemical quality. Municipal water supplies. Nova Scotia Department of Health, Halifax, Nova Scotia.

NSF International (2012). Nitrate/Nitrite effluent values: Summary of NSF testing experience on POU devices under NSF/ANSI Standards 53 and 58 (2005 – 2011). Report for Health Canada. NSF International, Ann Arbor, Michigan.

NSF/ANSI (2009a). Reverse osmosis drinking water treatment systems. NSF International/American National Standards Institute Standard 58. NSF International, Ann Arbor, Michigan.

NSF/ANSI (2009b). Drinking water distillation systems. NSF International/American National Standards Institute Standard 62. NSF International, Ann Arbor, Michigan.

NSF/ANSI (2009c). Drinking water treatment units—health effects. NSF International/American National Standards Institute Standard 53. NSF International, Ann Arbor, Michigan.

NSF/ANSI (2009d). Drinking water system components—health effects. NSF International/American National Standards Institute Standard 61. NSF International, Ann Arbor, Michigan.

NTP (1990). Final Report on the Reproductive Toxicity of Sodium Nitrite (CAS No. 7632-00-0). Research Triangle Park, NC: National Toxicology Program. Report No.: NTP 90-266.

NTP (2001). Toxicology and carcinogenesis studies of sodium nitrite (CAS No. 7632-00-0) in F344/N rats and B6C3F1 mice (drinking water studies). National Toxicology Program, National Institute of Environmental Health Sciences, Research Triangle Park, NC. pp. 7–273 (Technical Report Series TR-495).

Nyakas, C., Buwalda, B., Kramers, R.J., Traber, J. and Luiten, P.G. (1994a). Postnatal development of hippocampal and neocortical cholinergic and serotonergic innervation in rat: effects of nitrite-induced prenatal hypoxia and nimodipine treatment. Neuroscience, 59(3): 541–559.

Nyakas, C., Buwalda, B., Markel, E., Korte, S.M. and Luiten, P.G. (1994b). Life-spanning behavioural and adrenal dysfunction induced by prenatal hypoxia in the rat is prevented by the calcium antagonist nimodipine. Eur. J. Neurosci., 6(5): 746–753.

Nyakas, C., Markel, E., Bohus, B., Schuurman, T. and Luiten, P.G. (1990). Protective effect of the calcium antagonist nimodipine on discrimination learning deficits and impaired retention behavior caused by prenatal nitrite exposure in rats. Behav. Brain Res., 38(1): 69–76.

Odell, L., Kirmeyer, G., Wilzak, A., Jacangelo, J., Marchinko, J. and Wolfe, R. (1996). Controlling nitrification in chloraminated systems. J. Am. Water Works Assoc., 88(7): 86–98.

OEHHA (1997). Public health goals for nitrate and nitrite in drinking water. Office of Environmental Health Hazard Assessment, California Environmental Protection Agency, Sacramento, California .Available at: www.oehha.ca.gov/water/phg/pdf/nit2_c.pdf.

OEHHA (2005). Air Toxics Hot Spots Program risk assessment guidelines. Part II: Technical support document for describing available cancer potency factors. Office of Environmental Health Hazard Assessment, California Environmental Protection Agency, Sacramento, California.

OEHHA (2006). Public health goal for N-nitrosodimethylamine in drinking water. Office of Environmental Health Hazard Assessment, California Environmental Protection Agency, Sacramento, California.

Ohshima, H. and Bartsch, H. (1981). Quantitative estimation of endogenous nitrosation in humans by monitoring N-nitrosoproline excreted in the urine. Cancer Res., 41(9 Pt 1): 3658–3662.

Ohshima, H. and Bartsch, H. (1994). Chronic infections and inflammatory processes as cancer risk factors: possible role of nitric oxide in carcinogenesis. Mutat. Res., 305(2): 253–264.

Ohshima, H., Furihata, C., Matsushima, T. and Bartsch, H. (1989). Evidence of potential tumour-initiating and tumour-promoting activities of hickory smoke condensate when given alone or with nitrite to rats. Food Chem. Toxicol., 27: 511–516.

Olsen, P., Gry, J., Knudsen, I., Meyer, O. and Poulsen, E. (1984). Animal feeding study with nitrite-treated meat. IARC Sci. Publ., 57: 667–675.

Ontario Ministry of the Environment (2011). Personal communication from Satish Deshpande. September.

Paediatric Epidemiolgy Group. (1999). Nitrate in drinking water and childhood-onset insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus in Scotland and Central England. University of Leeds

Palli, D., Saieva, C., Coppi, C., Del Giudice, G., Magagnotti, C., Nesi, G., Orsi, F. and Airoldi, L. (2001). O^6-alkylguanines, dietary N-nitroso compounds, and their precursors in gastric cancer. Nutr. Cancer, 39(1): 42–49.

Pant, N. and Srivastava, S.P. (2002). Testicular and spermatotoxic effect of nitrate in mice. Hum. Exp. Toxicol., 21(1): 37–41.

Parks, N.J., Krohn, K.J., Mathis, C.A., Chasko, J.H., Geiger, K.R., Gregor, M.E. and Peek, N.F. (1981). Nitrogen-13-labeled nitrite and nitrate: distribution and metabolism after intratracheal administration. Science, 212(4490): 58–60.

Parslow, R.C., McKinney, P.A., Law, G.R., Staines, A., Williams, R. and Bodansky, H.J. (1997). Incidence of childhood diabetes mellitus in Yorkshire, northern England, is associated with nitrate in drinking water: an ecological analysis. Diabetologia, 40(5): 550–556.

Paynor, L. and Fabiani, C. (1995). Anion rejection in a nitrate highly rejecting reverse osmosis thin-film composite membrane. Desalination, 104: 165–174.

Peake, E., MacLean, M.A. and Sandhu, H.S. (1988). Total inorganic nitrate (particulate nitrate and nitric acid) in the atmosphere of Edmonton, Alberta, Canada. Atmos. Environ., 22(12): 2891–2893.

Pegg, A.E. (2000). Repair of O^6-alkylguanine by alkyltransferases. Mutat. Res., 462(2–3): 83–100.

Pennington, J.A.T. (1998). Dietary exposure models for nitrates and nitrites. Food Control, 9(6): 385–395.

Peto, R., Gray, R., Brantom, P. and Grasso, P. (1991a). Dose and time relationships for tumor induction in the liver and esophagus of 4080 inbred rats by chronic ingestion of N-nitrosodiethylamine or N-nitrosodimethylamine. Cancer Res., 51(23 Pt 2): 6452–6469.

Peto, R., Gray, R., Brantom, P. and Grasso, P. (1991b). Effects on 4080 rats of chronic ingestion of N-nitrosodiethylamine or N-nitrosodimethylamine: a detailed dose–response study. Cancer Res., 51(23 Pt 2): 6415–6451.

Pfnader, W.H., Brown, J.R. and Garner, G.B. (1993). Terminology for reporting nitrate concentration. University of Missouri Extension report G9802. Available at: http://extension.missouri.edu/publications/DisplayPub.aspx?P=G9802

Phaneuf, D., Chaussé, K., Pantako, O. and Levallois, P. (2004). Évaluation du risque à la santé pour la population exposée aux nitrates présents dans l'eau potable. Saint-Lazare, Quebec.

Pintar, K., Slawson, R. and Huck, P. (2000). Investigation of conditions and control strategies influencing nitrification in a chloraminated bench-scale distribution study. In: Proceedings of the American Water Works Association Water Quality and Technology Conference. American Water Works Association, Denver, Colorado.

Pintar, K.D.M., Anderson, W.B., Slawson, R.M., Smith, F.E. and Huck, P.M. (2005). Assessment of a distribution system nitrification critical threshold concept. J. Am. Water Works Assoc., 97(7): 116–129.

Pogoda, J.M. and Preston-Martin, S. (2001). Maternal cured meat consumption during pregnancy and risk of paediatric brain tumour in offspring: potentially harmful levels of intake. Public Health Nutr., 4(2): 183–189.

Preston-Martin, S., Pogoda, J.M., Mueller, B.A., Holly, E.A., Lijinsky, W. and Davis, R.L. (1996). Maternal consumption of cured meats and vitamins in relation to pediatric brain tumors. Cancer Epidemiol. Biomarkers Prev., 5(8): 599–605.

Prince Edward Island Department of Environment, Labour and Justice (2010). Personal communication from George Somers.

Prival, M.J., Simmon, V.F. and Mortelmans, K.E (1991). Bacterial mutagenicity testing of 49 food ingredients gives very few positive results. Mutat. Res., 260: 321–329.

Prospero, J.M. and Savoie, D.L (1989). Effect of continental sources of nitrate concentrations over the Pacific. Ocean. Nature, 339(6227): 687–689.

Rademacher, J.J., Young, T.B. and Kanarek, M.S. (1992). Gastric cancer mortality and nitrate levels in Wisconsin drinking water. Arch. Environ. Health, 47(4): 292–294.

Radikova, Z., Tajtakova, M., Kocan, A., Trnovec, T., Sebokova, E., Klimes, I. and Langer, P. (2008). Possible effects of environmental nitrates and toxic organochlorines on human thyroid in highly polluted areas in Slovakia. Thyroid, 18(3): 353–362.

Radovanovic, Z. and Stevanovic, D. (1988). Different forms of mineral nitrogen in drinking water and the Balkan nephropathy. Arch. Environ. Contam. Toxicol., 17(6): 813–815.

Rathbone, B.J., Johnson, A.W., Wyatt, J.I., Kelleher, J., Heatley, R.V. and Losowsky, M.S. (1989). Ascorbic acid: a factor concentrated in human gastric juice. Clin. Sci., 76(3): 237–241.

Reddy, K. and Lin, J. (2000). Nitrate removal from groundwater using catalytic reduction. Water Res., 34(3): 995–1001.

Richard, Y.R. (1989). Operating experiences at full-scale biological and ion-exchange denitrification plants in France. J. Inst. Water Environ. Manage., 3(2): 154–166.

Rivett, M.O, Buss, S.R., Morgan, P., Smith, J.W.N. and Bemment, C.D. (2008). Nitrate attenuation in groundwater: a review of biogeochemical controlling processes. Water Res, 42:4215-4232.

Rogalla, F., de Larminat, G., Coutelle, J. and Godart, H. (1991). Experience with nitrate removal methods from drinking water. In: Nitrate contamination: exposure, consequence, and control. I. Bogárdi, R.D. Kuzelka and W.G. Ennenga (eds.). Springer-Verlag, New York, New York. 520 pp.

Rogers, M.A.M., Vaughan, T.L., Davis, S. and Thomas, D.B. (1995). Consumption of nitrate, nitrite, and nitrosodimethylamine and the risk of upper aerodigestive tract cancer. Cancer Epidemiol. Biomarkers Prev., 4(1): 29–36.

Roth, A.C. and Smith, M.K. (1988). Nitrite-induced iron deficiency in the neonatal rat. Toxicol. Appl. Pharmacol., 96(1): 43–51.

Roth, A.C., Herkert, G.E., Bercz, J.P. and Smith, M.K. (1987). Evaluation of the developmental toxicity of sodium nitrite in Long-Evans rats. Fundam. Appl. Toxicol., 9(4): 668–677.

Ruckart, P., Henderson, A., Black, M. and Flanders, D. (2008). Are nitrate levels in groundwater stable over time? J. Expo. Sci. Environ. Epidemiol., 18: 129–133.

Ruddell, W.S., Bone, E.S., Hill, M.J., Blendis, L.M. and Walters, C.L. (1976). Gastric-juice nitrite. A risk factor for cancer in the hypochlorhydric stomach? Lancet, 2(7994): 1037–1039.

Ruppenthal, S. (2004). Treating water high in nitrate to supplement supply. J. Am. Water Works Assoc., 96(5): 68–70.

Ruppenthal, S. (2007). Nitrate removal solutions for drinking water: how a flexible approach can deliver reliable results. J. Am. Water Works Assoc., 99(6): 28–30.

Sahli Menkouchi, M.A., Tahaikt, M., Achary, I., Taky, M., Elhanouni, F., Hafsi, M., Elmghari, M. and Elmidaoui, A. (2006). Technical optimization of nitrate removal for groundwater by ED using a pilot plant. Desalination, 189: 200–208.

Sahli Menkouchi, M.A., Annouar, S., Mountadar, M., Soufiane, A. and Elmidaoui, A. (2008). Nitrate removal of brackish underground water by chemical adsorption and by electrodialysis. Desalination, 227: 327–333.

Salem, K., Sandeaux, J., Molenat, J., Sandeaux, R. and Gavach, C. (1995). Elimination of nitrate from drinking water by electrochemical processes. Desalination 1001:123-131.

Sanchez-Echaniz, J., Benito-Fernandez, J. and Mintegui-Raso, S. (2001). Methemoglobinemia and consumption of vegetables in infants. Pediatrics, 107(5): 1024–1028.

Sandor, J., Kiss, I., Farkas, O. and Ember, I. (2001). Association between gastric cancer mortality and nitrate content of drinking water: ecological study on small area inequalities. Eur. J. Epidemiol., 17(5): 443–447.

Santafe-Moros, A., Gozalvez-Zafrilla, J.M. and Lora-Garcia, J. (2005). Performance of commercial nanofiltration membranes in the removal of nitrate ions. Desalination, 185: 281–287.

Saskatchewan Water Security Agency, (2010). Personal communication from Sam Ferris. February.

SCC (2011). Directory of accredited product and service certification bodies. Standards Council of Canada, Ottawa, Ontario. Available at: www.scc.ca/en/programs-services/product-certification/directory-of-accredited-clients

Schock, M.R. and Lytle, D.A. (2011). Internal corrosion and deposition control. In: Water quality and treatment—a handbook of community water supplies. 6th edition. American Water Works Association and McGraw-Hill, New York, New York.

Schoeman, J.J. and Steyn, A. (2003). Nitrate removal with reverse osmosis in a rural area in South Africa. Desalination, 155: 15–26.

Scragg, R.K., Dorsch, M.M., McMichael, A.J. and Baghurst, P.A. (1982). Birth defects and household water supply. epidemiological studies in the Mount Gambier region of South Australia. Med. J. Aust., 2(12): 577–579.

Sedgwick, B. (1997). Nitrosated peptides and polyamines as endogenous mutagens in O^6-alkylguanine-DNA alkyltransferase deficient cells. Carcinogenesis, 18(8): 1561–1567.

Seidel, C., Gorman, C. and Werner, K. (2008). Nitrate reduction by sulphur modified iron: pilot study results. Presentation at the American Water Works Association Inorganic Contaminants Workshop. American Water Works Association, Denver, Colorado.

Seidel, C.S., Gorman, C., Darby, J.L. and Jensen, V.B. (2011). An assessment of the state of nitrate treatment alternatives. Report prepared for the American Water Works Association (AWWA) Inorganic Contaminant Research and Inorganic Water Quality Joint Project Committee. American Water Works Association, Denver, Colorado. Available at: www.awwa.org/files/Resources/TECProjects/TECReportNitrateFINALRevised07272011.pdf

Sen, N.P., Smith, D.C., Moodie, C.A. and Grice, H.C. (1975). Failure to induce tumours in guinea pigs after concurrent administration of nitrite and diethylamine. Food Cosmet Toxicol 13(4):423-425 [Online 13 August 2010].

Shank, R.C. and Newberne, P.M. (1976). Dose response study of the carcinogenicity of dietary sodium nitrite and morpholine in rats and hamsters. Food Cosmet. Toxicol., 14(1): 1–8.

Shapiro, K.B., Hotchkiss, J.H. and Roe, D.A. (1991). Quantitative relationship between oral nitrate-reducing activity and the endogenous formation of *N*-nitrosoamino acids in humans. Food Chem. Toxicol., 29(11): 751–755.

Shephard, S.E., Schlatter, C. and Lutz, W.K. (1987). Assessment of the risk of formation of carcinogenic *N*-nitroso compounds from dietary precursors in the stomach. Food Chem. Toxicol., 25(1): 91–108.

Shimada, T. (1989). Lack of teratogenic and mutagenic effects of nitrite on mouse fetuses. Arch. Environ. Health, 44(1): 59–63.

Shiotani, A., Iishi, H., Uedo, N., Higashino, K., Kumamoto, M., Nakae, Y. and Tatsuta, M. (2004). Hypoacidity combined with high gastric juice nitrite induced by *Helicobacter pylori* infection is associated with gastric cancer. Aliment. Pharmacol. Ther., 20(Suppl. 1): 48–53.

Shrimali, M. and Singh, K.P. (2001). New methods of nitrate removal from water. Environ. Pollut., 112: 351–359.

Shuval, H.I. and Gruener, N. (1972). Epidemiological and toxicological aspects of nitrates and nitrites in the environment. Am. J. Public Health, 62(8): 1045–1052.

Siddiqi, M., Kumar, R., Kaul, D., Spiegelhalder, B. and Preussmann, R. (1992). Salivary nitrate and nitrite concentrations from a sample population of children and adults in high risk area for esophageal and gastric cancers in Kashmir, India. Cancer Lett., 64(2): 133–136.

Sinha, D.P. and Sleight, S.D. (1971). Pathogenesis of abortion in acute nitrite toxicosis in guinea pigs. Toxicol. Appl. Pharmacol., 18(2): 340–347.

Skadsen, J. (1993). Nitrification in distribution system. J. Am. Water Works Assoc., 7: 95–103.

Skadsen, J. and Cohen, Y.K (2006). Operational and treatment practices to prevent nitrification. In: Manual of water supply practices M56: Fundamentals and control of nitrification in chloraminated drinking water distribution systems. American Water Works Association, Denver, Colorado.

Sleight, S.D. and Atallah, O.A. (1968). Reproduction in the guinea pig as affected by chronic administration of potassium nitrate and potassium nitrite. Toxicol. Appl. Pharmacol., 12(2): 179–185.

Smith, C.D. (2006). Monitoring for nitrification prevention and control. In: Manual of water supply practices M56: Fundamentals and control of nitrification in chloraminated drinking water distribution systems. American Water Works Association, Denver, Colorado.

Sobala, G.M., Crabtree, J.E., Dixon, M.F., Schorah, C.J., Taylor, J.D., Rathbone, B.J., Heatley, R.V. and Axon, A.T. (1991). Acute *Helicobacter pylori* infection: clinical features, local and systemic immune response, gastric mucosal histology, and gastric juice ascorbic acid concentrations. Gut, 32(11): 1415–1418.

Spiegelhalder, B., Eisenbrand, G. and Preussmann, R. (1976). Influence of dietary nitrate on nitrite content of human saliva: possible relevance to *in vivo* formation of *N*-nitroso compounds. Food Cosmet. Toxicol., 14(6): 545–548.

Steindorf, K., Schlehofer, B., Becher, H., Hornig, G. and Wahrendorf, J. (1994). Nitrate in drinking water. A case–control study on primary brain tumours with an embedded drinking water survey in Germany. Int. J. Epidemiol., 23(3): 451–457.

Sugiyama, K., Tanaka, T. and Mori, H. (1979). Carcinogenicity examination of sodium nitrate in mice. Acta Schol. Med. Univ. Gifu, 27(1): 1–6.

Super, M., Heese, H. de V., MacKenzie, D., Dempster, W.S., du Plessis, J. and Ferreira, J.J. (1981). An epidemiological study of well-water nitrates in a group of south west African/Namibian infants. Water Res., 15: 1265–1270.

Suziki, H., Iijima, K., Scobie, G., Fyfe, V., McColl, K.E.L. (2005). Nitrate and nitrosative chemistry within Barrett's oesophagus during acid reflux. Gut, 54: 1527-1535.

Tabacova, S., Baird, D.D. and Balabaeva, L. (1998). Exposure to oxidized nitrogen: lipid peroxidation and neonatal health risk. Arch. Environ. Health, 53(3): 214–221.

Tabacova, S., Balabaeva, L. and Little, R.E. (1997). Maternal exposure to exogenous nitrogen compounds and complications of pregnancy. Arch. Environ. Health, 52(5): 341–347.

Tajtakova, M., Semanova, Z., Tomkova, Z., Szokeova, E., Majoros, J., Radikova, Z., Sebokova, E., Klimes, I. and Langer, P. (2006). Increased thyroid volume and frequency of thyroid disorders signs in schoolchildren from nitrate polluted area. Chemosphere, 62(4): 559–564.

Tannenbaum, S.R., Weisman, M. and Fett, D. (1976). The effect of nitrate intake on nitrite formation in human saliva. Food Cosmet. Toxicol., 14(6): 549–552.

Tannenbaum, S.R., Wishnok, J.S. and Leaf, C.D. (1991). Inhibition of nitrosamine formation by ascorbic acid. Am. J. Clin. Nutr., 53(Suppl. 1): 247S–250S.

Taylor, H.W. and Lijinsky, W. (1975). Tumor induction in rats by feeding heptamethyleneimine and nitrite in water. Cancer Res., 35(3): 812–815.

Taylor, J.S. and Wiesner, M. (1999). Membranes. In: Water quality and treatment—a handbook of community water supplies. 5th edition. R.D. Letterman (ed.). American Water Works Association and McGraw-Hill, Inc. New York, New York.

Terblanche, A.P.S. (1991). Health hazards of nitrate in drinking water. Water S.A., 17(1): 77–82.

Til, H.P., Falke, H.E., Kuper, C.F. and Willems, M.I. (1988). Evaluation of the oral toxicity of potassium nitrite in a 13-week drinking-water study in rats. Food Chem. Toxicol., 26(10): 851–859.

Til, H.P., Kuper, C.F. and Falke, H.E. (1997). Nitrite-induced adrenal effects in rats and the consequences for the no-observed-effect level. Food Chem. Toxicol., 35(3–4): 349–355.

Toccalino, P.L., Norman, J.E. and Hitt, K.J. (2010). Quality of source water from public-supply wells in the United States, 1993–2007: U.S. Geological Survey Scientific Investigations Report 2010-5024, 206 pp.

Tonacchera, M., Pinchera, A., Dimida, A., Ferrarini, E., Agretti, P., Vitti, P., Santini, F., Crump, K. and Gibbs, J. (2004). Relative potencies and additivity of perchlorate, thiocyanate, nitrate, and iodide on the inhibition of radioactive iodide uptake by the human sodium iodide symporter. Thyroid, 14(12): 1012–1019.

Tricker, A.R. (1997). *N*-Nitroso compounds and man: sources of exposure, endogenous formation and occurrence in body fluids. Eur. J. Cancer Prev., 6(3): 226–268.

Tsuda, H. and Hasegawa, M. (1990). Malignant transformation of mouse BALB/c3T3 cells induced by $NaNO_2$. Carcinogenesis, 11: 595–597.

Tsuda, H. and Kato, K. (1977). High rate of endoreduplications and chromosomal aberrations in hamster cells treated with sodium nitrite *in vitro*. Mutat. Res., 56: 69–74.

Tsuda, H., Inui, N. and Takayama, S. (1976). *In vitro* transformation of newborn hamster cells induced by sodium nitrite. Gann, 67: 165–173.

Turek, B., Hlavsova, D., Tucek, J., Waldman, J. and Cerna, J. (1980). The fate of nitrates and nitrites in the organism. IARC Sci. Publ., 31: 625–632.

U.S. EPA (1993). Methods for determination of inorganic substances in environmental samples. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Cincinnati, Ohio (EPA 600/R-93/100).

U.S. EPA (2002a). Nitrification. Distribution system issue paper. Office of Water, Office of Ground Water and Drinking Water, U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Washington, DC.

U.S. EPA (2002b) Guidance for implementing a point-of-use or point-of-entry treatment strategy for compliance with the Safe Drinking Water Act. Office of Water, United States Environmental Protection Agency, Washington, D.C.

U.S. EPA (2006a). Basic information about nitrate in drinking water. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Washington, DC. Available at: www.water.epa.gov/drink/contaminants/basicinformation/nitrate.cfm

U.S. EPA (2006b) Point-of-use or point-of-entry treatment options for small drinking water systems.Office of Water, United States Environmental Protection Agency, Washington, D.C.

U.S. EPA (2007a). Nitrates and nitrites. TEACH chemical summary. U.S. EPA, toxicity and exposure assessment for children's health. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Washington, DC. Available at: www.epa.gov/teach/chem_summ/Nitrates_summary.pdf

U.S. EPA (2007b). Guidelines establishing test procedures for the analysis of pollutants under the Clean Water Act; National Primary Drinking Water Regulations; and National Secondary Drinking Water Regulations; analysis and sampling procedures; Final rule. 40 CFR Part 122, 136 et al. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Washington, DC. Available at: www.deq.state.va.us/vpdes/pdf/40CFR136-TestProcedures-FinalRule.pdf

U.S. EPA (2007c) Arsenic removal from drinking water by point of use reveres osmosis (POU RO) U.S EPA demonstration projext at Sunset Ranch development in Homedale, ID final performance evaluation report. Report prepared for National Risk Management Research Laboratory, Office of Research and Development, United States Environmental Protection Agency, Cincinnati, Ohio. EPA/600/R-07/082.

U.S. EPA (2009a). Analytical methods approved for drinking water compliance monitoring of inorganic contaminants and other inorganic constituents. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Washington, DC. Available at: www.epa.gov/safewater/methods/pdfs/methods/methods_inorganic.pdf

U.S. EPA (2009b). Analytical feasibility support document for the second six-year review of existing National Primary Drinking Water Regulations. Office of Water, U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Washington, DC (EPA 815-B-09-003).

U.S. EPA (2009c). Contaminant occurrence support document for category 2 contaminants for the second six-year review of National Primary Drinking Water Regulations. Office of Water, U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Washington, DC (EPA 815-B-09-011).

U.S. EPA (2010). Cooperation on emission inventories, trends, and mapping. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Washington, DC. Available at: www.epa.gov/airmarkets/progsregs/usca/coop.html

U.S. EPA (2011). Estimation programs interface suite™ for Microsoft® Windows, v 4.0. United States Environmental Protection Agency, Washington, DC

Urbain, V., Benoit, R. and Manem, J. (1996). Membrane bioreactor: a new treatment tool. J. Am. Water Works Assoc., 88(5): 75–86.

Van der Bruggen, B., Everaert, K., Wilms, D. and Vandecasteele, C. (2001). Application of nanofiltration for removal of pesticides, nitrate and hardness from ground water: rejection properties and economic evaluation. J. Memb. Sci., 193: 239–248

Van der Hoek, J.P., Van der Ven, P.J.M. and Klapwijk, A. (1998). Combined ion exchange/biological denitrification for nitrate removal from ground water under different process conditions. Water Res., 22(6): 679–684.

Van Duijvenboden, W. and Matthijsen, A.J.C.M. (1989). Integrated criteria document nitrate. National Institute for Public Health and the Environment (RIVM). (Report No. 758473012) [cited in WHO, 2007].

Van Leeuwen, J.A., Waltner-Toews, D., Abernathy, T., Smit, B. and Shoukri, M. (1999). Associations between stomach cancer incidence and drinking water contamination with atrazine and nitrate in Ontario (Canada) agroecosystems, 1987–1991. Int. J. Epidemiol., 28(5): 836–840.

van Logten, M.J., den Tonkelaar, E.M., Kroes, R., Berkvens, J.M. and van Esch, G.J. (1972). Long-term experiment with canned meat treated with sodium nitrite and glucono-δ-lactone in rats. Food Cosmet. Toxicol., 10(4): 475–488.

Van Loon, A.J.M., Botterweck, A.A.M., Goldbohm, R.A., Brants, H.A.M., Van Klaveren, J.D. and Van Den Brandt, P.A. (1998). Intake of nitrate and nitrite and the risk of gastric cancer: a prospective cohort study. Br. J. Cancer, 78(1): 129–135.

Van Maanen, J.M.S., Van Dijk, A., Mulder, K., De Baets, M.H., Menheere, P.C., Van Der Heide, D., Mertens, P.L. and Kleinjans, J.C.S. (1994). Consumption of drinking water with high nitrate levels causes hypertrophy of the thyroid. Toxicol. Lett., 72(1–3): 365–374.

Van Maanen, J.M., Pachen, D.M., Dallinga, J.W. and Kleinjans, J.C. (1998). Formation of nitrosamines during consumption of nitrate- and amine-rich foods, and the influence of the use of mouthwashes. Cancer Detect. Prev., 22(3): 204–212.

Van Maanen, J.M., Albering, H.J., de Kok, T.M., van Breda, S.G., Curfs, D.M., Vermeer, I.T., Ambergen, A.W., Wolffenbuttel, B.H., Kleinjans, J.C. and Reeser, H.M. (2000). Does the risk of childhood diabetes mellitus require revision of the guideline values for nitrate in drinking water? Environ. Health Perspect., 108(5): 457–461.

Vanderpas, J. (2006). Nutritional epidemiology and thyroid hormone metabolism. Annu. Rev. Nutr., 26: 293–322.

Velizarov, S., Crespo, J.G. and Reis, M.A. (2002). Removal of nitrate from water in a novel ion exchange membrane bioreactor. Water Supply, 2(2): 161–167.

Vermeer, I.T.M. and Van Maanen, J.M.S. (2001). Nitrate exposure and the endogenous formation of carcinogenic nitrosamines in humans. Rev. Environ. Health, 16(2): 105–116.

Vermeer, I.T.M., Gerrits, M.M., Moonen, E.J.C., Engels, L.G.J.B., Dallinga, J.W., Kleinjans, J.C.S., van Maanen, J.M., Kuipers, E.J. and Kusters, J.G. (2002). *Helicobacter pylori* does not mediate the formation of carcinogenic *N*-nitrosamines. *Helicobacter*, 7(3): 163–169.

Vermeer, I.T.M., Moonen, E.J.C., Dallinga, J.W., Kleinjans, J.C.S. and Van Maanen, J.M.S. (1999). Effect of ascorbic acid and green tea on endogenous formation of *N*-nitrosodimethylamine and *N*-nitrosopiperidine in humans. Mutat. Res., 428(1–2): 353–361.

Vermeer, I.T.M., Pachen, D.M.F.A., Dallinga, J.W., Kleinjans, J.C.S. and Van Maanen, J.M.S. (1998). Volatile *N*-nitrosamine formation after intake of nitrate at the ADI level in combination with an amine-rich diet. Environ. Health Perspect., 106(8): 459–463.

Virtanen, S.M., Jaakkola, L., Rasanen, L., Ylonen, K., Aro, A., Lounamaa, R., Akerblom, H.K. and Tuomilehto, J. (1994). Nitrate and nitrite intake and the risk for type 1 diabetes in Finnish children. Childhood Diabetes in Finland Study Group. Diabet. Med., 11(7): 656–662.

Vleeming, W., van de Kuil, A., te Biesebeek, J.D., Meulenbelt, J. and Boink, A.B. (1997). Effect of nitrite on blood pressure in anaesthetized and free-moving rats. Food Chem. Toxicol., 35(6): 615–619.

Volkmer, B.G., Ernst, B., Simon, J., Kuefer, R., Bartsch, G., Jr., Bach, D. et al. (2005). Influence of nitrate levels in drinking water on urological malignancies: a community-based cohort study. BJU Int., 95(7): 972–976.

Vorhees, C.V., Butcher, R.E., Brunner, R.L. and Wootten, V. (1984). Developmental toxicity and psychotoxicity of sodium nitrite in rats. Food Chem. Toxicol., 22(1): 1–6.

Vulsma, T., Gons, M.H. and de Vijlder, J.J. (1989). Maternal–fetal transfer of thyroxine in congenital hypothyroidism due to a total organification defect or thyroid agenesis. N. Engl. J. Med., 321(1): 13–16.

Wachinski, A.M. (2006). Nitrate removal. In: Ion exchange treatment for water. American Water Works Association, Denver, Colorado.

Wagner, D.A., Schultz, D.S., Deen, W.M., Young, V.R. and Tannenbaum, S.R. (1983). Metabolic fate of an oral dose of ^{15}N-labeled nitrate in humans: effect of diet supplementation with ascorbic acid. Cancer Res., 43: 1921–1925.

Wakida, F.T., and Lerner, D.N, (2005). Non-agricultural sources of groundwater nitrate: a review and case study. Water Res., 39:3-16.

Walker, R. (1990). Nitrates, nitrites and *N*-nitrosocompounds: a review of the occurrence in food and diet and the toxicological implications. Food Addit. Contam., 7(6): 717–768.

Walker, R. (1996). The metabolism of dietary nitrites and nitrates. Biochem. Soc. Trans., 20: 780–785.

Walker, R. (1999). The metabolism of dietary nitrites and nitrates. Royal Society of Chemistry, Cambridge.

Walton, G. (1951). Survey of literature relating to infant methemoglobinemia due to nitrate-contaminated water. Am. J. Public Health Nation's Health, 41(8 Pt 1): 986–996.

Wang, L., Chen, A., Tong, N. and Coonfare, C.T. (2007). Arsenic removal from drinking water by ion exchange. U.S. EPA demonstration project at Fruitland, ID, six-month evaluation report. Water Supply and Water Resources Division, National Risk Management Research Laboratory, Office of Research and Development, U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Cinnicinati, Ohio (EPA/600/R-07/017).

Ward, M.H., Mark, S.D., Cantor, K.P., Weisenburger, D.D., Correa-Villaseñor, A. and Zahm, S.H. (1996). Drinking water nitrate and the risk of non-Hodgkin's lymphoma. Epidemiology, 7(5): 465–471.

Ward, M.H., Pan, W.H., Cheng, Y.J., Li, F.H., Brinton, L.A., Chen, C.J., Hsu, M.M., Chen, I.H., Levine, P.H., Yang, C.S. and Hildesheim, A. (2000). Dietary exposure to nitrite and nitrosamines and risk of nasopharyngeal carcinoma in Taiwan. Int. J. Cancer, 86(5): 603–609.

Ward, M.H., Cantor, K.P., Riley, D., Merkle, S. and Lynch, C.F. (2003). Nitrate in public water supplies and risk of bladder cancer. Epidemiology, 14(2): 183–190.

Ward, M.H., deKok, T.M., Levallois, P., Brender, J., Gulis, G., Nolan, B.T. and VanDerslice, J. (2005a). Workgroup report: Drinking-water nitrate and health—recent findings and research needs. Environ. Health Perspect., 113(11): 1607–1614.

Ward, M.H., Heineman, E.F., McComb, R.D. and Weisenburger, D.D. (2005b). Drinking water and dietary sources of nitrate and nitrite and risk of glioma. J. Occup. Environ. Med., 47(12): 1260–1267.

Ward, M.H., Cerhan, J.R., Colt, J.S. and Hartge, P. (2006). Risk of non-Hodgkin lymphoma and nitrate and nitrite from drinking water and diet. Epidemiology, 17(4): 375–382.

Ward, M.H., Rusiecki, J.A., Lynch, C.F. and Cantor, K.P. (2007). Nitrate in public water supplies and the risk of renal cell carcinoma. Cancer Causes Control, 18(10): 1141–1151.

Ward, M.H., Heineman, E.F., Markin, R.S. and Weisenburger, D.D. (2008). Adenocarcinoma of the stomach and esophagus and drinking water and dietary sources of nitrate and nitrite. Int. J. Occup. Environ. Health, 14(3): 193–197.

Ward, M.H., Kilfoy, B.A., Weyer, P.J., Anderson, K.E., Folsom, A.R. and Cerhan, J.R. (2010). Nitrate intake and the risk of thyroid cancer and thyroid disease. Epidemiology, 21(3): 389–395.

Warton, B., Heitz, A., Zappia, L.R., Franzmann, P.D., Joll, C.A., Alessandrino, M., Allpike, M., O'Leary, B. and Kagi, R.I. (2007). Magnetic ion exchange drinking water treatment in a large-scale facility. J. Am. Water Works 99(1):89-101

Wassenaar, L.I., Hendry, M.J. and Harrington, N. (2005). Decadal geochemical and isotopic trends for nitrate in a transboundary aquifer and implications for agricultural beneficial management practices. Environ. Sci. Technol., 40:4626-4632.

Weisburger, J.H., Marquardt, H., Hirota, N., Mori, H. and Williams, G.M. (1980). Induction of cancer of the glandular stomach in rats by an extract of nitrite-treated fish. J. Natl. Cancer Inst., 64(1): 163–167.

Weyer, P.J., Cerhan, J.R., Kross, B.C., Hallberg, G.R., Kantamneni, J., Breuer, G., Jones, M.P., Zheng, W. and Lynch, C.F. (2001). Municipal drinking water nitrate level and cancer risk in older women: the Iowa Women's Health Study. Epidemiology, 12(3): 327–338.

WHO (2007). Nitrate and nitrite in drinking-water. Background document for development of WHO Guidelines for Drinking-water Quality. World Health Organization, Geneva (WHO/SDE/WSH/07.01/16).

Whong, W.Z. and Ong, T.M. (1979). Mediated mutagenesis of dimethylnitrosamine in *Neurospora crassa* by various metabolic activation systems. Cancer Res., 39(5): 1525–1528.

Whong, W.Z., Speciner, N.D. and Edwards, G.S. (1979). Mutagenicity detection of *in vivo* nitrosation of dimethylamine by nitrite. Environ. Mutagen., 1(3): 277–282.

Wilczak, A., Jacangelo, J., Marcinko, J., Odell, L., Kirmeyer, G. and Wolf, R. (1996). Occurrence of nitrification in chloraminated distribution systems. J. Am. Water Works Assoc., 88(7): 74–85.

Witter, J.P., Gatley, S.J. and Balish, E. (1979). Distribution of nitrogen-13 from labeled nitrate ($^{13}NO_3^-$) in humans and rats. Science, 204(4391): 411–413.

Woodruff, T.J., Zeise, L., Axelrad, D.A., Guyton, K.Z., Janssen, S., Miller, M., Miller, G.G., Schwartz, J.M., Alexeeff, G., Anderson, H. et al. (2008). Meeting report: Moving upstream-evaluating adverse upstream end points for improved risk assessment and decision-making. Environ. Health. Perspect.116(11):1568-75.

WQA (2012). Assessment of performance of POU systems used for nitrate/nitrite reduction. Report for Health Canada. Water Quality Association. Lisle, Illinois.

Xia, S., Zhang, Y. and Zhong, F. (2009). A continuous stirred hydrogen-based polyvinyl chloride membrane biofilm reactor for the treatment of nitrate contaminated drinking water. Bioresour. Technol., 100: 6223–6228.

Xu, G., Song, P. and Reed, P.I. (1992). The relationship between gastric mucosal changes and nitrate intake via drinking water in a high-risk population for gastric cancer in Moping County, China. Eur. J. Cancer Prev., 1(6): 437–443.

Xu, J., Xu, X. and Verstraete, W. (2001). Quantitative measurement of the nitrate reductase activity in the human oral cavity. Food Chem. Toxicol., 39(4): 393–400.

Xu, Y. and Chi, H. (1990). The effect of Chinese tea on the occurrence of esophageal tumors induced by *N*-nitrosomethylbenzylamine formed *in vivo*. Biomed. Environ. Sci., 3(4): 406–412.

Yamamoto, K., Nakajima, A., Eimoto, H., Tsutsumi, M., Maruyama, H., Denda, A., Nii, H., Mori, Y. and Konishi, Y. (1989). Carcinogenic activity of endogenously synthesized *N*-nitrosobis(2-hydroxypropyl)amine in rats administered bis(2-hydroxypropyl)amine and sodium nitrite. Carcinogenesis, 10(9): 1607–1611.

Yang, C.Y., Cheng, M.F., Tsai, S.S. and Hsieh, Y.L. (1998). Calcium, magnesium, and nitrate in drinking water and gastric cancer mortality. Jpn. J. Cancer Res., 89(2): 124–130.

Yang, C.Y., Wu, D.C. and Chang, C.C. (2007). Nitrate in drinking water and risk of death from colon cancer in Taiwan. Environ. Int., 33(5): 649–653.

Yang, H. and Cheng, H. (2007). Controlling nitrite level in drinking water chlorination and chloramination. Separation and Purification Technology 56:392-396

Yoshida, A., Harada, T. and Maita, K. (1993). Tumor induction by concurrent oral administration of ethylenethiourea and sodium nitrite in mice. Toxicol. Pathol., 21(3): 303–310.

Yoshida, Y., Hirose, M., Takaba, K., Kimura, J. and Ito, N. (1994). Induction and promotion of forestomach tumors by sodium nitrite in combination with ascorbic acid or sodium ascorbate in rats with or without *N*-methyl-*N*′-nitro-*N*-nitrosoguanidine pre-treatment. Int. J. Cancer, 56(1): 124–128.

Yukon Environmental Health Services (2010). Personal communication from Patricia Brooks. March.

Zaki, A., Ait Chaoui, A., Talibi, A., Derouiche, A.F., Aboussaouira, T., Zarrouck, K., Chait, A. and Himmi, T. (2004). Impact of nitrate intake in drinking water on the thyroid gland activity in male rat. Toxicol. Lett., 147(1): 27–33.

Zeegers, M.P., Selen, R.F.M., Kleinjans, J.C.S., Goldbohm, R.A. and van den Brandt, P.A. (2006). Nitrate intake does not influence bladder cancer risk: the Netherlands Cohort Study. Environ. Health Perspect., 114(10): 1527–1531.

Zeeman, CL, Kross, B, and Vlad, M. (2002). A nested case-control study of methemoglobinemia risk factors in children of Transylvania, Romania. Environ Health Perspect, 110, 817-822.

Zeiger, E., Anderson, B., Haworth, S., Lawlor, T. and Mortelmans, K. (1992). *Salmonella* mutagenicity tests: V. Results from the testing of 311 chemicals. Environ. Mol. Mutag., 19(Suppl. 21): 2–141.

Zeilmaker, M.J., Meulenbelt, J., Kortboyer, J.M. and Slob, W. (1996). Safety assessment of nitrate: Mathematical modeling of nitrite formation in man and its application in the risk assessment of nitrate. Report No. 235802002 from National Institute of Public Health and the Environment (RIVM), Bilthoven, Netherlands, pp. 1–38.

Zeilmaker, M.J., Bakker, M.I., Schothorst, R. and Slob, W. (2010). Risk assessment of *N*-nitrosodimethylamine formed endogenously after fish-with-vegetable meals. Toxicol. Sci., 116(1): 323–335.

Zeisel, S.H., DaCosta, K.A. and Fox, J.G. (1985). Endogenous formation of dimethylamine. Biochem. J., 232(2): 403–408.

Zeman, C.L., Kross, B. and Vlad, M. (2002). A nested case–control study of methemoglobinemia risk factors in children of Transylvania, Romania. Environ. Health Perspect., 110(8): 817–822.

Zhang, Y., Groiffin, A., Rahman, M., Camper, A. and Edward, M. (2009a). Lead contamination of the potable water due to nitrification. Environ. Sci. Technol., 43(6): 1890–1895.

Zhang, Y., Love, N. and Edwards, M. (2009b). Nitrification in drinking water systems. Crit. Rev. Environ. Sci. Technol., 39: 153–208.

Zhang, Y., Edwards, M., Pinto, A., Love, N., Camper, A., Rahman, M. and Baribeau, H. (2010). Effect of nitrification on corrosion in the distribution system. Water Research Foundation, Denver, Colorado.

Zhao, H.X., Mold, M.D., Stenhouse, E.A., Bird, S.C., Wright, D.E., Demaine, A.G. and Millward, B.A. (2001). Drinking water composition and childhood-onset type 1 diabetes mellitus in Devon and Cornwall, England. Diabet. Med., 18(9): 709–717.

Zhu, X., Choo, K.-H. and Park, J.-M. (2006). Nitrate removal from contaminated water using polyelectrolyte-enhanced ultrafiltration. Desalination, 193: 350–360.

Zoeller RT, Tyl RW, Tan SW. (2007). Current and potential rodent screens and tests for thyroid toxicants. Crit Rev Toxicol 37(1-2):55-95. [cited in Miller et al., 2009].

Zoeller, R.T. and Crofton, K.M. (2005). Mode of action: Developmental thyroid hormone insufficiency—neurological abnormalities resulting from exposure to propylthiouracil. Crit. Rev. Toxicol., 35(8–9): 771–781.

Appendix A: List of Acronyms

AAF	2-acetyl aminofluorene
ADI	acceptable daily intake
AGT	O6-alkylguanine-DNA alkyltransferase
Aln	allantoin
AMP	aminopyrine
ANSI	American National Standards Institute
ASC	ascorbate
BEN	Balkan endemic nephropathy
BHPA	bis(2-hydroxypropyl)amine
bw	body weight
CI	confidence interval
Cim	cimetidine
CPM	chlorpheniramine maleate
DDAO	N,N-dimethyldodecylamine-N-oxide
DEA	diethylamine
DMA	dimethylamine; dimethylamine hydrochloride
DNA	deoxyribonucleic acid
DPH	diphenhydramine hydrochloride
DSF	disulfiram
DW	drinking water
EPA	Environmental Protection Agency (U.S.)
eq	equivalent
ETU	ethylenethiourea
EU	ethylurea
FAO	Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations
HMI	heptamethyleneimine
HPT	hypothalamic–pituitary–thyroid
IDDM	insulin-dependent type 1 diabetes mellitus
IRIS	Integrated Risk Information System
JECFA	Joint FAO/WHO Expert Committee on Food Additives
LD_{50}	dose estimated to be lethal to half of the animals
LOAEL	lowest-observed-adverse-effect level
MAC	maximum acceptable concentration
MAni	methylaniline
MDL	method detection limit
Mor	morpholine
MU	methylurea
NADH	reduced nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide
NC	nitrosatable compound
NDEA	*N*-nitrosodiethylamine
NDMA	*N*-nitrosodimethylamine
NHL	non-Hodgkin's lymphoma
NIS	sodium/iodide symporter

NMU	*N*-nitroso-*N*-methylurea
NO_2^-	nitrite ion
NO_2-N	nitrite nitrogen
NO_3^-	nitrate ion
NO_3-N	nitrate nitrogen
NOAEL	no-observed-adverse-effect level
NOC	*N*-nitroso compound
NOEL	no-observed-effect level
NPRO	*N*-nitrosoproline
NPYR	*N*-nitrosopyrrolidine
NSF	NSF International
NTP	National Toxicology Program (U.S.)
OEHHA	Office of Environmental Health Hazard Assessment (California)
OR	odds ratio
Pip	piperazine
PQL	practical quantitation limit
RNA	ribonucleic acid
RR	relative risk; rate ratio
SCC	Standards Council of Canada
SD	Sprague-Dawley
SG	Syrian Golden
SM	Standard Method
Sw	Swiss
T_3	triiodothyronine
T_4	thyroxine
TD_{05}	tumorigenic dose 05
TMA	trimethylamine
TMAO	trimethylamine-N-oxide
TSH	thyroid stimulating hormone
U	unit
UDS	unscheduled DNA synthesis
UV	ultraviolet
w/w	weight per weight
WHO	World Health Organization